Contents

Preface vii
Acknowledgments x
Introduction: Korean sounds and Hangul 1

1 인사 27
Greetings

2 친구 소개하기 35
Introducing friends

3 사무실에서 43
In an office

4 길 물기 50
Asking for directions

5 어디 가세요? 62
Where are you going?

6 이것이 무엇인가? 73
What is this?

7 점심식사 86
Going out for lunch

8 약속하기 97
Making an appointment

9 택시잡기 107
Taking a taxi

10 물건사기 118
Shopping

11 주말여행 128
Weekend trip

12 은행에서 138
In the bank
Preface

By the 1980s foreign language education in the United States and Europe had shifted its focus to doing something with language rather than knowing about it. Many foreign language teachers now hold the view that speaking should be stressed over grammar, even from the very beginning of a language course. In foreign language classes, learners are consistently encouraged to speak in the target language as much as they can, without paying too much attention to the errors they may make. In order to refresh foreign language instruction and to facilitate this process, instructors have made special efforts to dramatize their classes with a variety of authentic supplementary materials, ranging from newspaper scripts, time-tables, and menus, to audio- and videotapes of talkshows by native speakers.

At the heart of this new approach is the concept of "proficiency," which is defined as the student's ability to do something with the language rather than to know about it. This concept is fast becoming the guiding principle around which foreign language curricula and teaching are designed. Colloquial Korean, which tries to implement this concept, joins a new breed of functionally based language textbooks.

This self-instructional volume is designed as an elementary language textbook suitable for complete beginners who visit Korea on business, as tourists or who are taking evening classes. However, it can also be used as an excellent supplementary text for Korean language courses offered at university level. The volume provides a broad range of practical situations that enable students to express basic ideas useful in day-to-day living in Korea. It supplies elementary vocabulary and lays the foundation for comprehension of the fundamental principles of Korean grammar. I have endeavored to present material simply and clearly. Different types of oral practice are implemented in a practical context. Vocabulary and grammar
are presented, in a controlled and cumulative manner, throughout the lessons. The pace in presenting the materials is specifically set for those studying on their own. The recordings which come with this book are designed to stimulate enthusiasm, by presenting the authentic sounds of Korean as spoken by native speakers. A complete Answer key, Korean–English/English–Korean glossary, and Grammar index will facilitate the process of learning Korean.

The primary purpose of this volume is to help learners to speak and understand Korean. The approach always emphasizes the ability of learners of Korean to use what they have studied in each lesson, and all materials and activities in the volume are designed to achieve this goal.

*Colloquial Korean* consists of a tutorial section on Korean sounds and scripts, and twenty lessons. This tutorial is intended to help learners of Korean develop the auditory capability to hear and to discriminate Korean sounds as a learnable system, and to recognize the characters of the Korean alphabet.

Each lesson presents selected dialogues. However, a sentence-by-sentence translation is provided only in the first seven lessons. The eighth lesson serves as a point of departure, after which the learner should feel comfortable with the direct use of the materials without having to rely on English translations. Each lesson has a two-part dialogue, and each part is divided into the following six sections:

**Chapter summary** This box lays out the major objectives each lesson intends to achieve in terms of topics and grammar points.

**Dialogue** The Dialogue introduces ten to twelve lines of Korean sentences on a chosen topic. The aim of presenting dramatized dialogues is to familiarize the reader with language materials that are used to express basic ideas in daily conversational forms.

**Vocabulary** This section lists the key vocabulary items essential to deciphering Korean sentences presented in the dialogues. Some words listed in the Vocabulary or Exercise sections of the previous lessons are re-listed, because they are deemed to be key words or essential to understanding the dialogue or passage concerned.

**Grammar points** These are devoted to explaining the grammatical patterns in basic terms as well as listing some idiomatic expressions. Both categories are incorporated into the dialogue. Each grammar point is accompanied by several further examples.

**Exercises** These offer practical material in the patterns of Korean. In working through the exercises, the learner is advised to look up in the Korean–English glossary words not previously introduced or words whose meanings are unfamiliar. However, before you do resort to the glossary, try to deduce the meaning of an unfamiliar word from the context.

**Culture point** The Culture point section describes some aspect of Korean culture relevant to the theme of the lesson.

Korean letters may look strange, but you’ll find after a little practice that you can recognize and reproduce them effortlessly. We will start by looking at the system of Korean sounds and Hangul. Good luck!
Acknowledgments

Colloquial Korean is a self-instructional volume which attempts to integrate my experience of teaching Korean and my research in Korean linguistics with teaching. The volume grew out of its predecessor, Modern Korean (first- and second-year course), published in 1990 and 1992, respectively, under grants from the Daewoo Foundation in Seoul, Korea. In publishing Colloquial Korean, I am deeply grateful to my former students at Brown University for their input during the experimental phase. I am also grateful to numerous colleagues who have adopted the Modern Korean volumes in their Korean language programs, such as the one at Princeton University. Their support and constructive criticism have been greatly appreciated. Without their support this volume, in its present form, could not be published. I am also much indebted to my colleague and long-time friend, Professor Warren Herendeen, in the Department of Language and Communication at Mercy College in Dobbs Ferry, New York, for his warm encouragement and sustained support in many ways. Last, but not least, much credit is due to Simon Bell, Editor in the Language Section at Routledge, who provided me with valuable advice and pedagogical suggestions. I am particularly thankful for the sustained patience and perseverance he has shown to me during the entire course of writing this volume.

Providence, Rhode Island
In-Seok Kim

Introduction: Korean sounds and Hangul

Modern Korean is spoken today throughout the Korean peninsula, the peninsula's total population being over 60 million. Although Korean's linguistic affiliation is debatable, it is commonly believed that it is similar to the Japanese language in terms of pronunciation, structure, and words. Before King Sejong invented the Korean phonetic script Hangul, in 1443, the Korean people had to use as many as 50,000 Chinese characters to make communication possible. At that time Chinese characters were only used by the elite; the majority of the population were excluded from using the Chinese characters, which were extremely difficult to learn and use. In order to revamp the system, King Sejong commissioned his scholars to invent a phonetic script of twenty-eight letters. Since then, Korean people have been using Hangul together with some 12,000 Chinese characters in reading and writing, but they have been pronouncing them in the Korean way, which is quite different from the Chinese pronunciation of corresponding characters. In 1945 the North Korean government abandoned the use of Chinese characters entirely, and the South Korean government made some efforts to phase it out gradually, but failed. In recent years, however, there have been signs that the use of Chinese characters is being encouraged in every walk of Korean society, including elementary, middle, and high schools.

This chapter consists of six Units. It provides a step-by-step presentation of Hangul as a phonetic system and prepares you for learning the material in the lessons that follow. Throughout this section, try to listen to the recording of each Unit over and over again, so that you can develop confidence not only in recognizing Korean sounds but also in pronouncing them in as near-native a way as possible. This confidence will lay the foundation for getting to grips with the dialogues in the lessons. If you don't have the recordings, practice reading the sounds as presented throughout the units.
Unit 1: Vowels ☞

There are eight simple vowels whose qualities are very different from those of English. These are 아, 어, 오, 우, 이, 에, 아, 여.

English approximations

아 is pronounced like “Ah” in “Ah-ha”
어 like “ur” in “fur”
오 like “o” in “tow”
우 like “oo” in “too”
익 like “oo” in “book”
이 like “ee” in “see”
에 like “e” in “pet”
예 like “a” in “pat”

Exercise 1 Circle the vowel you hear:

1 아 어 우 에 예 이
2 오 어 아 오 에 이
3 에 이 에 오 우 오
4 이 아 오 에 오 에
5 예 에 오 이 우 오

Exercise 2 Circle the last vowel you hear:

1 아 우 이 아 에 아
2 우 에 이 오 우 아
3 이 아 이 어 우 아
4 이 오 우 에 아 아
5 예 아 이 어 우 오

Arranging vowels

All Hangul symbols are arranged from top to bottom, as in 오, 우, 오, and from left to right as in 아, 어, 이, 에, 예. Note that when the symbol for a vowel is written, the empty (or zero) consonant “о” must be added. Each of the eight vowels above is a combination of the zero consonant “о” and a vowel. Look at the following:

Top  o  o  o

Bottom  ↓  ↓  ↓

Exercise 3 Follow the order of strokes as indicated and write each of the five vowels three times:

Exercise 4 Follow the order of strokes as indicated and write each of the three vowels three times:
Unit 2: Nine consonants ☐☐

There are nine consonants: ᵇ, ᵇ, ᵇ, ᵇ, ᵇ, ᵇ, ᵇ, ᵇ. Consonant symbols are placed at the beginning of the syllables where the symbol “וכ” is found in the vowels (see Unit 1).

1 The first consonant is звучает. It is read as “gi-yuk.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

가 as in “gar” in “gargle”
겨 like “gir” in “girl”
고 like “go” in “gore”
구 like “goo” in “goose”
고 like “goo” in “good”
기 like “gi” in “give”
겨 like “ge” in “get”
겨 like “ga” in “gag”

You write it like this:

So, writing it involves one stroke, moving from left to right and then down.

2 The second consonant is звучает. It is read as “ni-un.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

나 like “nar” in “narcotic”
너 like “ner” in “nerve”
노 like “no” in “nor”
누 like “nou” in “nose”
눈 like “nou” in “nook”
ניק like “nkee”
널 like “ne” in “negative”
넬 like “na” in “natty”

You write it like this:

So, writing this consonant involves two strokes.

3 The third consonant is звучает. It is read as “di-gut.” When we combine this with the vowels, we get:

다 like “dar” in “darn”
디 like “dir” in “dirt”
도 like “do” in “dog”
두 like “do”
דר like “doo” in “*dook”
디 like “di” in “disk”
떼 like “de” in “dedicate”
떼 like “da” in “daddy”

In pronouncing this consonant, the tip of the tongue touches the back of the upper teeth.

You write it like this:

So, writing this consonant involves one stroke, moving from top to bottom and then to the right. The pronunciation of the second consonant should not pose any difficulties for English speakers, since it has the same pronunciation as “n.”

4 The fourth consonant is звучает. It is read as “ri-ul.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

라 like “ra” in “rather”
리 like “ru” in “Russia”
로 like “ro” in “robe”
루 like “roo” in “rooster”
르 like “roo” in “rook”
리 like “ri” in “ring”
렡 like “re” in “revel”
렃 like “ra” in “rat”

Note: An asterisk mark (*) indicates that the word given, aiming to show a sound’s Korean pronunciation, cannot be found in English.
In pronouncing this consonant, the tip of the tongue taps lightly against the gum ridge, as it does when you pronounce the word “letter”.

You write it like this:

So, writing this consonant involves three strokes.

5 The fifth consonant is ㅁ. It is read as “mi-um.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

ㅏ like “mar” in “market”  
ㅑ like “mer” in “merchant”  
ㅓ like “mo” in “mall”  
ㅕ like “moo” in “mood”  
ㅗ like “moo” in “*mook”  
ㅛ like “me”  
ㅜ like “me” in “met”  
ㅡ like “ma” in “man”

You write it like this:

This symbol is written with three strokes, as shown.

6 The sixth consonant is ㅂ. It is read as “bi-up.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

ㅏ like “bar”  
ㅑ like “bir” in “birth”  
ㅓ like “bo” in “bore”  
ㅕ like “boo”  
ㅗ like “boo” in “book”  
ㅛ like “be”  
ㅜ like “be” in “best”  
ㅡ like “ba” in “bat”

You write this consonant like this:

Four strokes are needed to complete the consonant.

7 The seventh consonant is ㅅ. It is read as “si-os.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

ㅏ like “sar” in “sardine”  
ㅑ like “sur” in “surf”  
ㅓ like “sa” in “saw”  
ㅕ like “soo” in “soothe”  
ㅗ like “soo” in “soot”  
ㅛ like “ci” in “city”  
ㅜ like “se” in “send”  
ㅡ like “sa” in “sand”

You write it like this:

This symbol is written with two strokes.

8 The eighth consonant is ㅇ. It is read as “i-ung” and is an empty consonant, which is placed before any vowel. When the symbol ㅇ is placed at the end of a syllable, its pronunciation is converted to “ng” as in the English word “ink.”

You write it like this:

So, writing this consonant involves a single stroke.
The final consonant is 조, which is read as “ji-us.” When it is combined with the vowels, we get:

자 like “jar”
져 like “jer” in “jerk”
죠 like “Joe”
주 like “jui” in “juice”
조 like “joo” in “jook”
저 like “ji” in “jig”
제 like “je” in “jelly”
제 like “ja” in “jam”

You can write it in two ways:

So, writing this symbol involves either two or three strokes.

**Exercise 5** Practice pronouncing the following syllables and compare them with the model pronunciations on the recording:

1 가
2 나
3 주
4 라
5 마
6 사
7 아
8 자
9 제
10 보

**Exercise 6** Practice writing out the following combinations in the columns given. As you are writing, try to pronounce each combination clearly and loudly.
Exercise 7 〇〇 Circle the written syllable or word that you hear on the recording:
1 가 너
2 바 베
3 다 러
4 저 소
5 제주 제주

Exercise 8 〇〇 Circle the pair of syllables you hear consecutively:
1 세 가 모 조 밝
2 공 강 동 장 송
3 나 베 드 소 머
4 바 다 저 리 조 미
5 에 다 드 누 저 자

Exercise 9 〇〇 Write or complete the written syllable that you hear:

Unit 3: Diphthongs 〇〇

A diphthong is a combination of semi-vowels (like Y and W vowels) and a vowel. There are thirteen diphthongs. They are composed of six Y vowels and seven W vowels. You can pronounce these sounds by blowing air out of the lung more tensely than you do when pronouncing the simple vowels. Their pronunciation is completed somewhat quickly, while the tongue moves in the direction of the Y or W vowels. But note that the tongue does not go all the way up to the part of the mouth where these two vowels are produced.

1 The six Y vowels are 야 (야), 에 (에), 여 (여), 에 (에), 요 (요), 우 (우). They are derived from six of the eight simple vowels, as shown in parentheses. These are pronounced close to the English pronunciations:

“ya” in “yard” (야)
“ya” in “yank” (예)
“yu” in “yummy” (여)
“ye” in “yes” (예)
“yo” in “yodel” (요)
“you” (유)

(The simple vowels オ and オ are not combined to produce the Y vowel.) An additional stroke on each diphthong signals the Y vowel quality of the sound. This is shown in the following:

아 + 오 = 야
어 + 오 = 여
요 + 오 = 요
우 + 오 = 우

All of these Y vowels, except 요, can be combined with some of the nine consonants (see Unit 2), e.g., 게, 꼬, 노, 러, 묘, 벌, 서.

Exercise 10 〇〇 Circle the syllables you hear:
1 가-가
2 저-구
3 머-저
4 벌-베
5 러-리
6 마-마
7 가-교
8 조-재
9 러-료
10 고-겨
Exercise 11  ☐  Circle the words you hear:

1 아구-아구
2 교사-교사
3 여유-여유
4 여자-여자
5 여우-여우
6 오리-요리
7 역사-역사
8 조사-주서
9 자유-자유
10 예기-야기

2 The seven W vowels are 와 (오 + 아), 위 (우 + 이), 외 (오 + 이), 위 (우 + 이), 왜 (오 + 에), 웨 (우 + 에), 외 (으 + 이). These vowels are formed by combining two simple vowels, as shown in parentheses. These are pronounced close to the English pronunciations:

"wa" in “want” (와)
"were" (위)
"way" (와)
"wi" in “wing” (위)
"wa" in “wag” (웨, 웨)
"uy" (위) (closest approximation as in “prune”)

All W vowels except 위 can be combined with some of the nine consonants (see Unit 2). Some examples are 위, 죽, 외, 쌓, 쓰.

3 So far, we have dealt with only the syllables that begin with a consonant. However, the consonants can also occur at the end of a syllable, as schematized in the following two combinations (where C = consonant and V = vowel):

범 guerrilla

Other common words are 변-분, 간-곤, 진-존, 잔-존.

Placing a consonant at the end of a syllable may be accompanied by some necessary phonetic change. It is not observable when it comes at the beginning. The following words show types of such phonetic change.

Exercise 12  ☐  Practice pronouncing the following and compare them with the model pronunciations on the recording:

1 와 2 죽 3 분 4 왜 5 위
6 쌓 7 교 8 쓰 9 외 10 쓰

Exercise 13 Practice writing the following ten times:

1 나
2 려
3 쓴
4 쓴
5 쓴
6 채
7 쓴
8 쓴
9 쓴
10 쓴
Exercise 14 ☐ ☐ Circle the syllable you hear:
1 데-데
2 쇠-쇠
3 과-귀
4 빠-뻐
5 꽁-꽁
6 뇌-뇌
7 뇌-뇌
8 뇌-뇌
9 뇌-뇌
10 의-의

Exercise 15 ☐ ☐ Circle the word you hear:
1 감자-겨자
2 종이-문이
3 선박-선갈
4 실력-양력
5 백지-병지
6 손병-나물
7 지갑-객석
8 야망-달력
9 고개-날개
10 육지-양복

Exercise 16 ☐ ☐ Complete the unfinished syllables or words you hear:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>가운(가운)</th>
<th>역</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>데무</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>뇌문</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>뇌문</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 4: Aspirated consonants ☐ ☐

The second group of consonants is composed of aspirated consonants ㄲ, ㅋ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅎ. Aspirated sounds are the ones produced when you puff out the air out of your mouth heavily. An initial consonant in each word should be emphasized, as in “car,” “take,” “paid,” “church.” Note that corresponding words “gar,” “date,” “bade,” “judge” are not aspirated, because a heavy puff of air does not accompany their pronunciation. These aspirated consonants are formed by modifying the symbols for the plain consonants “스, 쫒, 티, 푸” in the corresponding order, as shown below.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{스} & \rightarrow \text{쌍} \\
\text{ㅋ} & \rightarrow \text{ใด} \\
\text{ㅌ} & \rightarrow \text{띠} \\
\text{ㅍ} & \rightarrow \text{เผย} \\
\end{align*}
\]

1 The first aspirated consonant is 쌍. It is read as “chi-us” and is pronounced as “ch” in “church,” e.g., 죽, 친, 초, 추, 추.

You write it like this:

So, this symbol is written with three or four strokes (that is, an additional stroke on 스플):

2 The second aspirated consonant is ใด. It is read as “ki-uk” and is pronounced as “k” in “car,” e.g., 키, 큰, 커, 카.

You write it like this:

So, writing the symbol requires two strokes to be completed (that is, an additional stroke on ใด).
3 The third aspirated consonant is ㅋ. It is read as “ti-ut” and is pronounced as “t” in “toy,” e.g., 토, 터, 테, 튀.
   You write it like this:
   
   ![Diagram of ㅋ]

So, it requires three strokes to complete (one additional stroke on ㅌ).

4 The fourth aspirated consonant is ㅍ. It is read as “pi-up” and is pronounced as “p” in “pay,” as in 포, 폐, 파, 표.
   You write it like this:
   
   ![Diagram of ㅍ]

So, this symbol requires four strokes. It can be combined with not only some simple vowels (see Unit 1), but also some diphthongs (see Unit 3).

5 The consonant symbol ㅎ is pronounced “h” as in the English word “hike,” which is produced by narrowing the distance between the vocal cords. This symbol requires three strokes to write and causes ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ to become aspirated.
   You write it like this:
   
   ![Diagram of ㅎ]

**Exercise 18** Practice writing the following ten times:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 처</th>
<th>2 총</th>
<th>3 커</th>
<th>4 깃</th>
<th>5 딸</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 터</td>
<td>7 테</td>
<td>8 파</td>
<td>9 평</td>
<td>10 형</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 19**Circle the syllable or word you hear:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 총-총</th>
<th>2 빗-빗</th>
<th>3 깃-깃</th>
<th>4 자리-자리</th>
<th>5 다방-다방</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 바리-파리</td>
<td>7 자리-자리</td>
<td>8 별탁-별탁</td>
<td>9 현대-현대</td>
<td>10 후기-추기</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 17** Practice pronouncing the following and compare them with the model pronunciations on the recordings:

1 처
2 책
Exercise 20  Circle two syllables you hear consecutively:
1 랜넷 램 몇 개
2 짜침 짜개 단
3 희의 장 명 덤
4 봉넷 끼 마 멧
5 캉거 루 답 택

Exercise 21  Complete the unfinished syllables as you listen to them:

Exercise 22  Write down the syllables or words as you listen to them:

Exercise 23  Practice pronouncing the following:

Unit 5: Double consonants

Certain plain consonants can be doubled (repeated) to produce double consonants. These are ㄱ, ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ, and are derived from the plain consonants ㄱ, ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ, respectively. The doubling process is shown in the following:

- ㄱ + ㄱ → ㄲ
- ㄴ + ㄴ → ㄸ
- ㅂ + ㅂ → ㅃ
- ㅅ + ㅅ → ㅆ
- ㅈ + ㅈ → ㅉ

The double consonants are pronounced by holding one’s mouth tense and then suddenly releasing the sound without aspiration. The pronunciation of each double consonant is closest to “k” in “sky” (elry), “t” in “stick” (ellery), “p” in “spy” (.InputStream), “s” in “sink” (InputStream), and “t” in “cuts” (InputStream). Another group of double consonants may come at the end of a syllable. These consonants are

- ㅂ, ㅃ, ㄸ, ㅅ, ㅆ, ㅈ, ㅉ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅊ

all of which combine two different consonants. However, only one of these two consonants is pronounced, the knowledge of which one can come to grips with in the course of learning Korean. The double consonants ㄲ and ㅆ can also come finally, and they are pronounced like their corresponding plain consonants ㄱ, ㅅ. The following examples show which consonant is pronounced and which is not:

- 박 (박) 황 (황) 박 (박)
- 설 (설) 넥 (녁) 설 (설)
- 앵 (垵) 을 (움) 앵 (垵)
- 독 (독) 골 (골) 독 (독)
- 쥰 (詹姆)
### Exercise 24
Practice writing the following ten times:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>꾸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>꽉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>또</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>뿌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>뿌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>뿌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>쌓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>쌓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>달・별</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercise 25
Circle the syllable you hear:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>가・거</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>구・구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>또・도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>돌・돌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>뿌・뿌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>다・따</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>돌・말</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercise 26
Circle the word you hear:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>가다・마다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>끼다・그다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>모다・고다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>말랑・말랑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>공공・공공</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>조석・조석</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>잡다・-webpack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>적적・쩍쩍</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>부다・푸다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>시다・쓰다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercise 27
Circle the word you hear:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>가다・마다・마다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>크다・크다・끄다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>고다・고다・포다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>말랑・말랑・말랑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>공공・공공・공공</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>종・종・종</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>잡다・잡다・잡다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>차다・차다・짜다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>공・긍・긍</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>부다・푸다・뿌다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercise 28
Complete the unfinished syllable that corresponds to each one you hear:

1.

2.

3.
Unit 6: Summary, word structure, and other aspects of Korean

1 Modern Korean uses 40 sounds, consisting of 8 simple vowels, 13 diphthongs, and 19 consonants, as shown in the following summary chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple vowels</th>
<th>Y vowels</th>
<th>W vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아 이 오 우 응 이 읍 에</td>
<td>야 여 요 유 야 이</td>
<td>와 워 위 워 월 의</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diphthongs</th>
<th>Consonants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가 *가 거 거 고 교 구 금 기</td>
<td>나 *나 너 녀 노 노 둘 냐 니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다 *따 더 *더 도 *도 두 *두 두 니</td>
<td>라 *랴 려 려 로 루 콴 루 루</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마 *마 머 모 모 우 *류 뮤 미</td>
<td>바 *바 버 보 *보 부 *류 르 비</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사 *사 시 시 소 *소 수 *슈 시</td>
<td>아 *야 여 여 오 오 우 우 이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자 *자 지 지 조 조 주 *주 주 지</td>
<td>차 *차 치 치 초 *초 추 *추 치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>카 *카 커 코 *코 쿠 *쿠 크 크</td>
<td>타 *타 티 토 *토 푸 *푸 트 트</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파 *파 푸 푸 포 포 후 *후 프 프</td>
<td>하 *하 헤 헤 호 호 헤 헤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: An asterisk (*) indicates impossible combinations (and therefore not used in Modern Korean), but some of these can be used for words borrowed from many foreign languages including English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 The following Korean alphabet chart shows all the possible combinations between 10 major vowels and diphthongs selected and 14 consonants (except double consonants). This means that all of these are allowable combinations, but the ones that are marked * are not used. Since it is not always easy for even a native speaker of Korean to distinguish between possible combinations and impossible ones, learners are advised to study the possible combinations of these as they come across them in the sentences presented in this book.

Only some of other remaining vowels and diphthongs can be combined with the consonants, including double consonants, as in: 좌, 좌, 좌, 좌, 좌, 좌, 좌.  

3 A Korean letter is made up of three parts: initial, medial, and final. The first two parts are composed of either a vowel or diphthong sound, while the last only consists of the consonant (including the zero consonant ０). There are three types of combinations that can occur.

3.1 All letters in the above chart show a series of two-part letters. When we place the consonant (let's say ㅏ) of the three-part letters underneath the letters of the first line in the column (which is already the combination of a consonant ㅏ and a vowel ㅏ), we get the ten full letters 가, 가, 가, 가, 가, 가, 가, 가. However, letters that are marked * among these are not possible letters, the knowledge of which again belongs to the area of the native speaker's intuition. We can do the same combination again with a series
of letters on the first line in the column. By placing the arbitrary consonant ʋ vertically underneath them, we get another ten full letters on the first line of the column, only three of which are used in Modern Korean: 강, 곤, 군. By placing other consonants and even aspirated and double consonants underneath the letters on the chart, we can get the other full letters in use. Some of them are: 공, 농, 늘, 강, 막, 돈, 착, 엄.

3.2 When we place the third consonant (say 狷) underneath the combined letter (e.g., NotExist) of a consonant (끄) and a diphthong (ㅢ), we then get the full letter פתח. Likewise, we can get many other three-part full letters which are: 권, 권, 선, 선, 패. Here again, the learner is advised to learn three-part full letters using the diphthongs, as they occur in the sentences in the book.

3.3 Double consonants can also fill the third position, forming a full letter. These letters are: 임, 뫼, 쥨. And yet two different consonants can fill the third position as in 임, 뫼, 임, 임, 임, 임, 임, 임, 임, 임. As explained in Unit 5, only one representative consonant is actually pronounced. Words of the first group above are pronounced as if they were 임, 뫼, 쥨, while words of the second group are pronounced as if they were 임, 뫼, 임, 임.

4 Word structure Korean words are usually built out of combining a number of letters, the process of which we have seen above. For example, the word 가다 has two letters and is used as a verb meaning "go." There are also longer words than this such as 모르 다 "do not know," 인사하다 "greet." However, even a limited number of single letters can be used as if they were words: 강 "river," 눈 "eyes," 집 "house," etc.

5 Stress and intonation Unlike English, Korean employs neither a word stress (sometimes called accent) nor a sentence stress. Every English word puts an emphasis on one of its syllables (like on the first syllable in "history") whereas every Korean word sounds flat and regular. Furthermore, Korean sentences do not receive any stress, unlike English sentences (e.g., "The baby is interested in playing with a toy"). Because of this, to an English-speaking person, the rhythm of Korean sounds very mechanical, where sounds are lined up together with equal force and at regular intervals. However, Korean employs three kinds of intonation at the end of a sentence:

rising, falling, falling and momentary sustenance. The first type is used for statements, whereas the second type is for questions. The last type is used for commands and requests. The difference between them will be explained in detail in Lesson 2.

6 Punctuation The Korean language uses three kinds of punctuation mark at the end of a sentence. These are the period (.), the question mark (?), and the exclamation point (!). The comma (,) and other separators – the colon (:), semicolon (;), and the dash (–) – are also used within a sentence. Quotation marks ("", ") are often used to enclose the exact words of a speaker or writer. The usage of all these punctuation marks is very similar to that of English and other languages.

Korean alphabet bingo game

Directions

Write down in the box on p.26 any sixteen of the thirty-five Korean letters given below. While the instructor on the recording calls the letters in random order, cross out the letters you have written when you hear them called. If you cross out four letters in a row – in a vertical, horizontal, or diagonal direction – you can call "bingo." Then, you may stop the recording and check them against the model answer (see Key to exercises in the back of the book).

가 거 뉴 디 유 요 추
처 토 표 푸 휴 히 치
루 로 자 카 파 하 나
비 머 케 마 공 씻 동
갈 거 빠 벨 찍 작 쪽
1 인사
Greetings

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:

- greet someone properly in Korean
- address Korean adults
- write Korean names
- use the sentence ending -세요
- use the negative marker 안
- use the postposition -에
- use the topic case marker -은/는

Dialogue 1  

Mr. Kim and Miss Lee, colleagues in the office, casually greet each other on the street after not having seen each other for some time. This kind of greeting may occur at any time of day and in any situation. Mr. Kim also asks about one of their other colleagues, Mr. Park

KIM: 안녕하세요?
LEE: 김선생님 안녕하세요?
KIM: 오래만입니다.
LEE: 예, 오래만입니다.
KIM: 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?
LEE: 잘 지내세요.
KIM: 박선생님 어때세요?
LEE: 박선생님 잘 지내세요.

KIM: How are you?
LEE: How are you, Mr. Kim?
KIM: It's been a long time since I saw you.
LEE: Yes, it has.
KIM: How is everything with you these days?
LEE: I'm doing all right.
KIM: How about Mr. Park?
LEE: He's doing all right.
Vocabulary

안녕
하다
안녕하세요?
미스터
미스
예
오래간만

peace
do
How are you?
Mr.
Ms., Miss
yes
long time

입니다
어떻게
지내다
잘
은-는
요즘

is, are
how
get along
well
as for...
these days

Language points

Asking “How are you?”

Most phrases introduced in this dialogue are idiomatic expressions which do not require further analysis. For example, the phrase 안녕하세요? literally means “Are you in peace?” but it is functionally translated into the English expression “How are you?” Thus, these expressions should be learned as set phrases.

Addressing Korean adults

Koreans rarely address anyone by name without using an appropriate title. They use a job-related title alone or with a last name, after which a noun suffix -님 is attached, indicating respect shown to the person. When the person’s job-related title is not clear, they commonly use 선생님 (“teacher” plus honorific noun suffix), with his/her last name.

Examples using job-related titles
선생님
교수님
의사 선생님
김박사님
과정님
사장님

Examples using last names
김선생님
이선생님
박선생님
최선생님

teacher
professor
medical doctor
Dr. Kim
section chief
president
Mr. Kim
Mr. Lee
Mr. Park
Mr. Choi

However, when a senior employee of an organization addresses a relatively new employee (especially a high school or college graduate) whose status (or age) is lower than his, English loan words 미스터 (for a male) and 미스 (for a female) can be used. This way of addressing employees is widely practiced especially in modern firms in Korea.

미스터 김 Mr. Kim
미스터 송 Mr. Song
미스 나 Miss Na
미스 한 Miss Han

Writing Korean names

The full Korean name takes the order of last name first, first name second as in:

김달수 Dal Soo Kim
한근수 Geun Soo Han
조재철 Jae Gul Jo

Other typical expressions

Other ways of responding to the expression 요즘 어떻게 지내세요? are as follows:

그저 그래요 So-so
좋아요 Good
잘 지내세요. I’m doing all right.
바쁘게 지내세요. I am busy.

Polite expression for “How are you?”

When people meet each other for the first time, they tend to use a more polite expression 안녕하십니까? In this case, both parties usually use a title of respect 선생 ("teacher" in its literal sense) combined with an honorific marker -님. The junior person may also use this expression to the senior in a greeting to show more respect.

윤선생님, 안녕하십니까? Mr. Yoon, how are you?
김선생님, 안녕하십니까? I’m fine. How about you, Mr. Kim?
**Topic case marker -은/는**

When an element of a sentence introduces a new topic in comparison with something talked about in the previous sentence, the suffix -은 is attached to the element ending in a consonant, but the suffix -는 is added to the element ending in a vowel. This topic case marker means roughly “As for...”

- 막신생님은 안녕하세요.  Mr. Park is OK.
- 이신생님은 잘 지내세요.  Mr. Lee is doing well.
- 미스 리는 잘 지내세요.  Miss Lee is doing well.
- 미스 최는 잘 지내세요.  Miss Choi is doing well.

**Exercises**

1 Greet the following colleagues whom you run across on the streets of Seoul.

a) Mr. Kim  
b) Professor Lee  
c) Section Chief Park  
d) Miss Kang

2 Greet the following people you are meeting for the first time.

a) Mr. Kim (M.D.)  
b) President of the company  
c) Miss Chang (teacher)

3 Someone asks you how everything is with you these days. Respond to the question with the following:

a) I’m doing OK.  
b) So-so.  
c) These days, I’m busy.

4 Rearrange the words of the dialogue to make sense.

a) 오래, 입니다. 예, 간만  
b) 리, 미스, 화세요? 안녕  
c) 지내세요? 요즘, 어떻게  
d) 교수님, 하십니까? 안녕, 김

5 Pronounce and write the following names in Korean.

a) Ki Soo Kang  
b) Sang Dal Park  
c) Keun Young Kim

6 You are the president of a Korean company which has recently hired a number of new staff members. How would you address the following staff when you run across them in the hallway?

a) Mr. Kim  
b) Ms. Han  
c) Miss Na  
d) Mr. Shin

7 Ask a colleague how the following are doing at the moment (these days):

a) Mr. Jin  
b) Miss Hwang  
c) Section Chief Park  
d) Ms. Lee (your junior)

**Culture point**

The basic concepts which underlie the deferential system of the Korean language are rooted in Confucian ethics. The tenets of this ancient Chinese philosophy dictate three beliefs: 1, one person may be more powerful than another; 2, one may be older than another; 3, one may be lower in social rank than another. The one who is deemed more powerful, older, and higher in social rank receives corresponding respect through the language used. This is the reason the Korean language is full of honorific vocabulary and expressions, the use of which often baffles the learner. Those learning Korean must understand that Koreans do not usually honor equality in their daily interpersonal relationships. Instead, a sense of inequality permeates the Korean language, and a speaker has to find an appropriate social rank or right age of the other person in order to communicate with him or her in the proper manner. When using 미스타 and 미스, which are English-influenced terms of address, one should address them neither to people with whom one is not very familiar nor to people more powerful and/or older than oneself.

**Dialogue 2  ○ ○ Mr. Kim and Miss Lee exchange the following short greetings when they pass. They may or may not have met once during the day**

- 오, 안녕하세요, 김사장님.  
- 김사장님, 안녕하세요.  
- 감사합니다.  
- 그게 정해진 것입니다.  
- 그럼 그럼, 안녕히 계세요.
Kim: 이선생님, 바쁘세요?
Lee: 예, 좀 바쁘요. 김선생님은 어때세요?
Kim: 저는 별로 안 바빠요.
Lee: 지금 어디 가세요?
Kim: 우체국에 갑니다.
이선생님은 어디 가세요?
Lee: 저는 식당에 갑니다.
Kim: 그럼, 안녕히 가세요.
Lee: 예, 안녕히 가세요.
Kim: Are you busy, Mr. Lee?
Lee: Yes, I am a little busy. And you?
Kim: I’m not very busy.
Lee: Where are you going now?
Kim: I’m going to the post office.
Where are you going?
Lee: I’m going to a restaurant.
Kim: Well, goodbye then.
Lee: Bye.

Vocabulary

| 벌로 | busy | 식당 | restaurant |
| 줄 | a little | 그럼 | well, then |
| 별로 | particularly | 안녕히 | peacefully |
| 안 | not | 저는 | as for me (humble |
| 가세요 | go | 교회에 | expression) |
| 갑니다 | go | 우체국 | post office |
| 지금 | now | 어디 | where |

Language points

Sentence ending -세요

This sentence ending, as attached to the verb stem, is used to express a statement with falling intonation, a question with rising intonation, and a request with momentarily sustained and falling intonation. The honorific marker -세요 indicates respect shown to the listener who is older or higher in social status than the speaker.

Verb stem

바쁘다  busy
가다  go
어떻다  how
 지금  바쁘세요?
이선생님  지금  바쁘세요.
Mr. Lee is busy now.

Sentence ending (honorific)

바쁘세요.
가세요.
어떻세요.
Are you busy now?

The negative marker -안

This marker negates most Korean verbs except identification verbs (which will be introduced at a later stage) when it is placed before a verb.

박선생님은  바쁘세요.
박선생님은  안  바쁘세요.
Mr. Park is busy.
Mr. Park isn't busy.
이선생님은  교회에  가세요.
이선생님은  교회에  안  가세요.
Mr. Lee goes to church.
Mr. Lee doesn't go to church.

The manner adverb 별로

This can also be used only with the negative marker 안 or other forms of negation (i.e., -지 않다) in the sentence.

지금  별로 안  바빠요.
별로 안  좋아요.
I am not very busy.
I am not very well.

The postposition -에

This postposition is attached directly to a place word and is followed by 가다 “go,” or 오다 “come”, or their compound verbs. It refers to a specific direction.

교회에 갑니다.
도서관에 갑니다.
집에 갑니다.
오늘 교회에 오세요.
(I) am going to church.
(I) am going to the library.
(I) am going home.
Please come to church today.
Exercises

8 Assume that your father is going to the following places and that someone asks where he is going. Answer the question using -세요?
   a church
   b library
   c restaurant
   d post office

9 Someone asks if you are going to the following places. Answer the question in the negative.
   a church
   b library
   c home
   d post office

10 You are helping a friend with their Korean grammar. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.
   a 강선님은 안 보고 비행예요.
   b 미스터 리는 별로 줄으셨어요.
   c 비스 진은 안 교회에 가세요.
   d 최교수님은 도서관에 별로 가세요.

2 친구 소개하기
Introducing friends

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
- introduce your friend(s) to a third party in different settings
- say goodbye to one another
- use three forms of expressions: declarative, interrogative, and request
- use personal pronouns (e.g., 나, 너, 그, etc.)
- use the subject case markers -이/가
- use the future tense -겠

Dialogue 1  ⚫⚫ Mr. Kim introduces one of his friends, Mary Jin, to Mr. Kang at the end-of-the-year party

Kim: 강 선생님, 안녕하세요?
Kang: 네, 김 선생님, 안녕하세요?
Kim: 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?
Kang: 덕택에 잘 지닙니다.
Kim: 강 선생님, 제 친구 소개하겠습니다.
      이분이 메리 진십시오.
Jin: 처음 뵙겠습니다. 저 메리 진입니다.
Kang: 처음 뵙겠습니다. 저 강기수입니다.
Kim: Miss Jin. How are you?
Kang: I'm fine. Mr. Kim. How are you?
Kim: How are you getting along these days?
Kang: I'm doing fine, thanks to you.
Kim: Mr. Kang. Let me introduce my friend to you.
      This is Mary Jin.
Jin: Nice to meet you. I'm Mary Jin.
Kang: Nice to meet you. I'm Ki Soo Kang.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>덕택에</td>
<td>thanks (to you)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친구</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소개하다</td>
<td>introduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제</td>
<td>my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이분</td>
<td>this person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>처음</td>
<td>first time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뷔다</td>
<td>see (humble form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>씨</td>
<td>Mr. or Miss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Forms of expression

Korean sentences use five forms of expression: 1 declarative, 2 interrogative, 3 request, 4 command, and 5 exclamation. These forms of expression are determined by their verb ending and intonation. Here are examples of the first three types:

**Declarative**

오래만 만났습니다.  
It's been a long time since I last saw you.

처음 했었습니다.  
I'm glad to meet you.

이제 가봐야겠습니다.  
I must be going now.

안 바쁘죠.  
I'm not busy.

**Interrogative**

안녕하세요?  
How are you?

메리 스미스입니까?  
Are you Mary Smith?

이분 아세요?  
Do you know this person?

바쁘세요?  
Are you busy?

**Request**

안녕히 가십시오.  
Bye-bye (lit. please go in peace).

안녕히 계십시오.  
Bye-bye (lit. please stay in peace).

안사하세요.  
Please say hello.

Examples for commands and exclamations will be introduced later.

The verb ending -습니다, -습니다 is exclusively used in declarative sentences, but the verb ending -입니까?, -습니까? is used for interrogative sentences. However, the verb ending -십시오 is limited to a request. The ending -요 can be used, with varying intonation, to form more than one kind of expression.

Linking verb -입니다

The linking verb -입니다 is a verb that identifies the predicate of a sentence with the subject, the function of which is to link the subject and predicate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이분이</td>
<td>강기수씨 입니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이분이</td>
<td>강기수씨 입니까?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the English verb “to be” (“am,” “are,” “is”) is incorporated into Korean predicate endings by using -입니다. It must always be attached to the preceding noun.

이분이                 
This person

한기수씨            
Ki Soo Han is

Subject case markers -이/가

Korean uses the subject case marker -이 after words ending in a consonant and -가 after those ending in a vowel. The systematic use of case markers in Korean such as these is rather complex, so this topic will be gradually expanded in the forthcoming lessons.

**Words ending in a consonant**

| 이분이   | 한기수씨가 |
| 저사람이 | 내가       |
| 책이    | 우리가     |
| 책상이  | 친구가     |

The future tense marker -겠

The future tense marker, inserted between the verb stem and the ending, indicates an action that takes place in the future, or a condition, or quality which will exist at some other time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>동작</th>
<th>I'd like to drink a cup of tea.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>홍차 한잔 하겠어요.</td>
<td>I'll study.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하겠습니다.</td>
<td>I'll go now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지금 가겠어요.</td>
<td>I'll come tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내일 오겠어요.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

1 You are on the phone and the person at the other end of the line asks who you are. Respond to the question.

2 Using the vocabulary given, answer the question. 이분이 누구입니까?
   a Mary Jin
   b Professor Kim
   c Mary Smith

3 Read the following English words and choose an appropriate subject case marker suitable for their Korean equivalents.
   a we
   b my friend
   c desk

4 One of your friends thinks you’re going to be busy with several activities over the weekend and asks what you are going to do. Respond to his questions.
   a go to church
   b study
   c go to the library

5 Examine the following sentences and write in “D” for declarative sentences, “I” for interrogative sentences, and “R” for request sentences.
   a 이분이 강기수씨입니다.
   b 안녕하세요?
   c 인사하십시오.
   d 저분 소개하십시오.

Culture point

When a Korean introduces someone to a third party, he usually takes him/her to a person who is older, more powerful, and/or senior. The first questions the senior person will ask of the person being introduced are likely to be of a somewhat personal and private nature and may include questions about the younger or less powerful person’s age, occupation, marriage, or the number of children he or she is raising. By gleaning this information from the one introduced, the senior or more powerful person can establish not only interpersonal relationships with him/her, but also the register of the language used in communicating with the person being introduced. This kind of “interpersonal relationship” is often carried to an extreme when Koreans meet foreigners for the first time. That is, they rush to ask similar questions of them, although the questions require personal and private answers. Foreigners need to realize that such questions are not intended to make one feel uncomfortable, but are a socially acceptable conversational form. As a preventive measure, one may draw on some sort of wit or wisdom with which to dodge the questions, without looking too evasive!

Dialogue 2  Miss Yoon takes one of her colleagues, John Kim, to a party in her friend’s house. His name is Ki Soo Kang. Miss Yoon introduces him to Mr. Kang. After having spent some time at the party, John Kim wants to say goodbye to the host.

Yoon: 강기수씨, 이분 아세요?
Kang: 아니요, 모릅니다.
Yoon: 인사하십시오.
   이분이 존 김씨입니다.
Kim: 처음 뵐겠습니다.
Kang: 처음 뵐겠습니다.
   (지) 강기수입니다.
   (Later)
Kim: 이제 가 왔어요.
   그림, 다음에 또 뵐겠습니다.
Kang: 안녕히 가십시오.
Kim: 안녕히 계십시오.

Yoon: Mr. Kang. Do you know this person?
Kang: No, I don’t know him.
Yoon: Please greet him.
   This is John Kim.
Kim: Glad to meet you.
Kang: Glad to meet you.
   I’m Ki Soo Kang.
   (Later)
Kim: I must be going now.
   Well, then, I’ll be seeing you again.
Kang: Bye now.
Kim: Bye.
Vocabulary

알다 know 모르다 do not know
아니요 no 다음에 next time
인사하다 greet 또 again
가 보다 try to go 계심시오 (to the person leaving)

Language points

Basic Korean sentence structure

Korean sentences basically consist of a subject and a predicate. The subject is the part of the sentence which tells you “who” or “what.” The predicate is the part of the sentence which tells what someone or something does (or is).

Subject Predicate
저 메리 전입니다.
저 이분 알아요.

One of the characteristics of Korean is that the verb is always placed at the end of the sentence.

Verb
이분 아세요?
안녕히 가십시오.
제 친구 소개하겠습니까.
etc.

Another characteristic of Korean is its tendency to omit the subject of a sentence if this is obvious from the context.

Subject Predicate
(저) 메리 전입니다. I’m Mary Jin.
(저) 이분 알아요. I know her (this person).
(선생님) 이분 아세요? Do you know her (this person)?

Personal pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>familiar</td>
<td>나/내 I</td>
<td>우리 we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>humble</td>
<td>저/제</td>
<td>저희</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second</td>
<td>familiar</td>
<td>너/네 you</td>
<td>너희 you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>honorific</td>
<td>그 사람 he/she</td>
<td>그 사람들 they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First and second person singular pronouns require specific particles when they are used as the subject of a sentence. Pronouns such as 나, 저, 너 always take 는 (thus 나는, 저는, 너는), whereas pronouns such as 내, 제, 네 always take 가 (thus 내가, 제가, 네가). Note that Korean uses honorifics, where a person of high social status receives respect in speech. One can also indirectly honor the other person present or a third party absent from the context by using either very respectful words for them or words lowering oneself.

Saying goodbye

Korean has distinctive forms for saying goodbye to a remaining or departing host or hostess. Regardless of whether one is the person leaving or staying, English speakers use the expressions, “goodbye,” “bye-bye,” or “so long.” In contrast, Korean speakers use the expression 안녕히 계세요 (lit. “stay in peace”) to the remaining host or hostess, and use the somewhat different expression 안녕히 가세요 (lit. “go in peace”) to the departing guest. When both parties leave, they of course exchange the same, latter, expression 안녕히 가세요.

Exercises

6 Someone asks you whether you know Mr. Lee, who has recently joined the company, and whom you do not know. How would you respond to the question?
7 Someone asks you whether you know Miss Kang, who became Prime Minister of Korea. You and Miss Kang attended the same college in the United States. How would you respond?

8 You are about to leave a party which is still in full swing. How would you say goodbye to the remaining guests at the party?

9 You have invited several people in the neighborhood. Having had a good time for a while, they are now leaving. How would you say goodbye to them?

10 There are several people at work whom you have to introduce to your roommate. Introduce the following individuals:

a Mr. Kim
b Section Chief Park
c Miss Hwang

11 Choose one word that does not belong to the given group:

a 나, 저, 우리, 너
b 우리, 저희, 너희, 그 사람
c 나, 너, 그 사람, 저희

12 Translate the following expressions, giving their Korean equivalents:

a I'm glad to meet you.
b Please meet him.
c This is Jenny Lee.
d I must be going.
e I'll be seeing you again.

---

3 사무실에서

In an office

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
- visit friends at work
- offer a visitor something to drink
- use the endings for a statement, a question, and a request
- use built-in honorific vocabulary
- use honorific insertions -세/시
- use the informal ending -이에요
- use the causal conjunction -아(이/여)서

Dialogue 1

Kyung Hee Park has arrived at the office where Mr. Kim works and asks the secretary if he is in

PARK: 수고하십시오. 김선생님 계세요?
SECRETARY: 네, 누구세요?
PARK: (저) 박경희입니다.
김선생님의 사업친구입니다.
SECRETARY: 잠깐 기다리세요. 이리 앉으세요.
PARK: 네, 감사합니다.
(A moment later)
SECRETARY: 들어가세요.
PARK: Hello. Is Mr. Kim in?
SECRETARY: Yes. May I take your name?
PARK: I'm Kyung Hee Park.
(I'm) a business friend.
SECRETARY: Please wait a moment. Have a seat here.
PARK: Thank you.
(A moment later)
SECRETARY: Please go in.
Vocabulary

수고하십시오  Hello  기다리다  wait
누구  who  이리  this way
사업  business  앉다  sit
잠깐  a moment  감사하다  thank
들어가다  enter

Language points

Two different forms of honorifics

The Korean language makes use of two different forms of honorifics - short and long - when making a statement, asking a question, and making a request. These forms are almost interchangeable and there is almost no difference in meaning between them. The long form, however, is slightly more formal (thus more polite) than the short form (informal). The latter form tends to be used more commonly by women than by men.

Statement with falling intonation
- 세요 (short) - 싶니다 (long)
바쁘세요.  바쁘십니다.  (Someone) is busy.
기다리세요.  기다리십니다.  (Someone) is waiting.
계세요.  계십니다.  (Someone) is in.

Question with rising intonation
- 세요? (short) - 싶니까? (long)
바쁘세요?  바쁘십니까?  Are you busy?
(or Is someone busy?)
기다리세요?  기다리십니까?  Are you waiting?
(or Is someone waiting?)
계세요?  계십니까?  Is someone in?

Request with momentary sustenance and falling intonation
- 세요 (short) - 싶십시오 (long)
안녕히 가세요.  안녕히 가십시오.  Please greet.
안녕히 가세요,  안녕히 가십시오.  Please go in peace (Bye-bye).
기다리세요.  기다리십시오.  Please wait.

Built-in honorific verbs

Korean uses a system of built-in honorific verbs, which are separate from the honorific verbs above. These honorific verbs are derivable by inserting either -세요 (short form) or -십시오 (long form) into a verb stem.

Verb stem  Honorific form  Meaning
있다  계시다  to exist, to be
있다  주무시다  to sleep
먹다  잡수시다  to eat
말하다  말씀 드리다  to say, tell, speak
보다  봅다  to see
주다  드리다  to give
묻다  여쭤다  to ask

Interrupting someone at a job site

The expression 수고하십시오 literally means that you are engaged in doing hard work. In lieu of a greeting, you may use this expression when you try to interrupt those engaged in work. However, you cannot use it to a third party absent from the scene.

수고하십시오.  May I interrupt you?
홍선생님 계세요?  Is Mr. Hong in?
아니오, 지금 안 계십니다.  No, he isn’t now.

Exercises

1 Write down the following three things you think your father will do today, using the short form ending -세요:

a stay at home  
b drink a cup of coffee  
c be busy

2 Do the same as in 1, this time using the long form ending -십시오.

3 You have thrown a party for your friends at work and you are offering them a cup of something to drink.

a milk  
b beer
c ginseng tea
d soda

4 One of your friends has visited you in the office and your secretary asks him to do the following, while she makes sure you are free to see him:

a have a seat here
b come this way
c go in

5 Translate the following sentences into Korean, using the honorific verb ending -세요:

a Mr. Kim sits over here.
b Miss Lee is sleeping.
c Dr. Chang is going home now.

6 Do the same as in 5, using the honorific verb ending -십시오.

7 Translate the following dialogue:

A: Hello. Is Miss Chang in?
B: Yes, she is in. May I take your name?
A: I am a business friend.
B: Please wait a moment.
A: Thank you.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Short</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>바쁘게</td>
<td>busily</td>
<td>- 이에요, 입니다 is, are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정사</td>
<td>business</td>
<td>예, 네 yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기분</td>
<td>mood, spirits</td>
<td>여기 here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋다</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>커피 coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘 되다</td>
<td>doing well</td>
<td>한 잔 one cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오래간만</td>
<td>long time</td>
<td>편찮다 OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>요즘</td>
<td>lately</td>
<td>참, 정말로 really</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

**The informal ending -이에요**

A non-honorific long ending -입니 다 is often pronounced as -이에요, and spelled in this way. Female speakers and schoolchildren tend to adopt this pronunciation, but male speakers prefer to use its original form. When the sentence ending -이에요 comes after a noun ending in a vowel, the vowel 이 is usually contracted to the following vowel 에, resulting in a single syllable 예.
The adverbial ending -게

Attached to certain adjectives, this ending makes the adjective into an adverb.

빠르게 quickly
느리게 slowly
바쁘게 busily

The conjunction -아/어(여)서

This conjunction is used to indicate a causal relationship between two combined sentences. It is directly attached to the stem of the fist action verb and is followed by the second verb.

오늘은 바쁘서, 도서관에 안 가요.
눈이 많이 와서, 교회에 안 가요.
피곤해서, 자겠어요.

Since I'm busy today, I am not going to the library.
Since it has snowed a lot, I am not going to church.
Since I'm tired, I am going to sleep.

The possessive marker -의

This particle indicates possession: it is equivalent to the English "'s" and "of." The first noun with the particle modifies the second noun. In casual conversations, the possessive marker -의 is usually deleted.

친구의 책 friend's book
그분의 책상 his desk
이선생님의 사무실 Mr. Lee's office

Exercises

8 Suppose you cannot go to church this Sunday and your friend wants to know why. Answer the question, based on the following three reasons:

a it is snowing
b you are very busy
c you are too tired

9 Answer the question 그것은 누구의 책이에요?

a Miss Jin's
b Professor Kelly's
c Mr. Park's

10 Translate the following dialogue:

a Since I'm tired today, I am not studying.
b My business is doing well these days.
c Since I am meeting my friend today, I'm in good spirits.
d Mr. Lee is very busy these days.

11 Make up your own sentences, using the following words:

a 잘, 땀액에, 지냅니다
b 지금, 못, 집에, 바쁘서, 가요.
c 와, 책, 이에요, 이선생님
4 질문기
Asking for directions

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
- express location and direction
- use negative sentences
- use informal verb ending -아(여/여)요.
- use sentence endings -고(을) 거예요, -아 하다
- use the conjunction of condition -(으)면 (e.g., “if” or “when”)
- use the postposition -(으)로

Dialogue 1  ☺ Mary Jin is in front of the subway station. She is looking for Seoul Railroad Station and asks a passerby for directions.

JIN: 설례합니다. 여기가 서울역입니까?
PASSERBY: 아니오, 여기는 서울역이 아닙니다. 바로 저기가 서울역입니다.
JIN: 감사합니다. 그럼, 여기는 어디입니까?
PASSERBY: 여기는 지하철역입니다.
JIN: 지하철으로 어떻게 건너 갤까요?
PASSERBY: 왼쪽으로 돌아 푸장 가세요.
JIN: 감사합니다.
PASSERBY: 천만에요. 조심해서 건너 가세요.

JIN: Excuse me. Is this Seoul Railroad Station?
PASSERBY: No, it isn't. Seoul Railroad Station is over there.
JIN: Thank you. What is this place?
PASSERBY: This is a subway station.
JIN: How can I cross over to the other side?
PASSERBY: Turn left and go straight ahead.
JIN: Thank you.
PASSERBY: You're welcome. Be careful when you cross.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>설례합니다</td>
<td>excuse me</td>
<td>여기</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울역</td>
<td>Seoul Station</td>
<td>지하철역</td>
<td>subway station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감사합니다</td>
<td>thank you</td>
<td>저쪽으로</td>
<td>that way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니나</td>
<td>not to be</td>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>turn around</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기</td>
<td>(over) there</td>
<td>천만에요</td>
<td>you're welcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곧장</td>
<td>right away</td>
<td>왼쪽으로</td>
<td>to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조심하다</td>
<td>be cautious</td>
<td>건너다</td>
<td>cross</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Expressing location and direction

Korean uses two sets of pointing words, one specifying location and the other direction. Each is relative to where the speaker and the hearer are situated.

Location

여기 here – a place near the speaker
저기 there – a place away from both the speaker and the hearer
거기 there – a place near the hearer
In the diagram, 여기 is used when the speaker refers to things in a place around himself or herself, while 저기 is used when the speaker refers to things in a place away from himself or herself and from the hearer. 거기 is used when the speaker refers to things in a place near the hearer (which has to be away from himself or herself.)

**Direction**

이리 this way — in the direction of the speaker
저기 that way — in a direction away from both the speaker and the hearer
그리 that way — in the direction in which the hearer is headed

In the diagram, 이리 is used when the speaker specifies the direction toward which the hearer is moving or engaged in moving things, while 저기 is used when the speaker specifies a direction away from both himself or herself and the hearer. 그리 is used when the speaker specifies the direction in which the hearer is moving or engaged in moving things.

**Two ways of negating Korean sentences**

One way negates identification sentences, and the other negates all other types of verbs.

Negating identification sentences requires the complement to be turned into the subject to which the subject marker 가/이 is attached.

It is then followed by the negative verb 아니다, 아닙니다. This process may be summarized as follows:

**Affirmative** (A = B)  
A 이/가 B 입니다  

**Negative** (A ≠ B)  
A 이/가 B 이/가 아닙니다

- 이분이 한국 사람입니다.  
  This person is a Korean.
- 이분이 한국 사람이 아닙니다.  
  This person isn't a Korean.
- 여기가 서울입니다.  
  This is Seoul.
- 여기가 서울이 아닙니다.  
  This isn't Seoul.

As we saw in Lesson 1, all other types of verbs can be negated by placing the negative marker 안 before the verb.

- 집에 가겠어요.  
  I'll go home.
- 집에 안 가겠어요.  
  I'm not going home.
- 김선생님은 지금 바쁘십니다.  
  Mr. Kim's busy right now.
- 김선생님은 지금 안 바쁘십니다.  
  Mr. Kim isn't busy right now.

**More polite questions**

You can use the following expressions to make questions more polite where asking for directions.

발씀 좀 묻겠습니다.  
May I ask you something?
여기가 시청 앞입니까?  
Is this the front of City Hall?
뭐 좀 물어봐도 될까요?  
Would you mind if I asked you something?

**Contracted forms**

You can use the following contracted forms in casual speech.

 바로 여기입니다.  
It's right here.
 바로 여기예요.  
It's right there.
 바로 저기입니다.  
 바로 저기예요.  

**The consonant ㄹ**

This consonant in the syllable 어렇게 is carried over to the next syllable 게 and is pronounced as 어더게. Other examples which show this carry-over in pronunciation are 이렇게, 그렇게.
Exercises

1 You are lost on the streets of Seoul. Ask a passerby how to get to the following places:

a Lotte Hotel  
b the subway station  
c Chongro Street

2 Suppose you are looking at a map of downtown Seoul. Ask the friend you are with where the place you are pointing to is located on the map.

a City Hall  
b Capitol Building  
c post office  
d East Gate Market

3 Answer the following questions according to the given cue, using one of three pointer words, outlined in Expressing location and direction above:

a 미국대사관이 어디에 놓습니까? (cue: hearer)  
b 신라호텔이 어디에 놓습니까? (cue: away)  
c 백화점이 어디에 놓습니까? (cue: speaker)  
d 은행이 어디에 놓습니까? (cue: hearer)  
e 경찰서가 어디에 놓습니까? (cue: speaker)

4 Name at least three public places where you as a traveler can do business in the city.

5 Make your own sentences, using the following words:

a 저쪽으로, 건너가다, 어떻게?  
b 오른쪽, 둘다, 지하도, 건너가다  
c 여기, 대사관, 아니다

6 You are giving someone who is learning Korean some grammar help. Correct his or her grammar.

a 저기가 지하철역가 입니다.  
b 여기는 안서울입니다.  
c 저기가 시청가 아닙니다.  
d 이전생님은 지금 바쁘세요.

7 Translate the following dialogue:

A: Excuse me. Where’s there a police station around here?  
B: It’s right over there across the street.  
A: How can I cross this street? There’s so much traffic.  
B: Well, you can use the underpass at the corner.  
A: I see. Thanks very much.  
B: You’re welcome.

8 Mr. Anderson is at City Hall, but he’s standing on the side opposite the Plaza Hotel (pronounced 플라자호텔), where he wants to get to. He encounters a high school student who does not speak any English. He notices an overpass to his left and heavy traffic on the wide streets. Write a realistic dialogue between Mr. Anderson and the high school student.

Culture point

On p. 56 you will find a map of Central Seoul. Look at the following: Seoul City Hall (1), Korea National Tourism Corporation (KNTC) (2), Sejong Cultural Center (3), Kyobo Building (4), U.S. Embassy (5), and Kyongbokkung (6). These are shown on the miniature map by Arabic numerals in ascending order. Located within walking distance are four major deluxe hotels: Chosun (7), Plaza (8), Lotte (9), and President (10). Major department stores, arcades, and “small or large” markets are also clustered in the downtown area, which provides foreigners with excellent shopping opportunities.

Dialogue 2  
Mr. Anderson is lost in downtown Seoul. He asks a passerby how he can get to the U.S. Embassy

ANDERSON: 실패합니다. 길을 잃어 버렸어요. 저기가 미국대사관이니까?  
PASSENDER: 아니오, 저기는 미국대사관이 아닙니다.  
ANDERSON: 그럼, 미국대사관에 어떻게 갈까요?  
PASSENDER: 저기 골목을 지나 가세요. 저기서 왼쪽으로 곧장 가세요.  
ANDERSON: 예, 감사합니다. 여기서 멈кро?  
PASSENDER: 걸어서 가면, 아마 시간이 많이 걸릴 거예요.  
ANDERSON: 차로 가면 어떻게요?  
PASSENDER: 차로 가면, 별로 안 걸려요.  
ANDERSON: 아, 그래요. 그럼 택시를 타야겠어요. 아무튼 감사합니다.  
PASSENDER: 전혀예요.
ANDERSON: Excuse me. I'm lost. Is that the U.S. Embassy?
PASSEBY: No, it isn't.
ANDERSON: Oh! How do I get there?
PASSEBY: Just go past the small side street over there.
       Go straight ahead from there to your left.
ANDERSON: Thank you. Is it far from here?
PASSEBY: If you walk, it'll take you quite a while.
ANDERSON: How about by car?
PASSEBY: If you go by car, it won't take you long.
ANDERSON: Oh, I guess I'll take a taxi. Thanks anyway.
PASSEBY: You're welcome.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>길</td>
<td>street</td>
<td>별로</td>
<td>particularly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잉여 버리다</td>
<td>to get lost</td>
<td>미국대사관</td>
<td>U.S. embassy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골목</td>
<td>alley</td>
<td>지나가다</td>
<td>pass by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸리다</td>
<td>to take</td>
<td>아마</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어서</td>
<td>by foot</td>
<td>많이</td>
<td>much, many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>멀다</td>
<td>far</td>
<td>면</td>
<td>if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>차로</td>
<td>by car</td>
<td>택시</td>
<td>taxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타다</td>
<td>to ride</td>
<td>시간</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감사하다</td>
<td>to be thankful</td>
<td>아무튼</td>
<td>anyway</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

**Informal verb ending -아(어/여)요**

The informal verb ending -아(어/여)요 is used when a speaker is already acquainted with the hearer to some extent (e.g., colleagues in the office). This ending can be used to make a statement, ask a question, or give a command. Different vowels need to be inserted, depending on the nature of the vowel used in the verb stem.

\[
\text{Verb stem} + \text{아/오} \rightarrow \text{아요: 가요, 자요, 양아요} \\
\text{Verb stem} + \text{우/으/이} \rightarrow \text{어요: 바빠요, 먹어요} \\
\text{Verb 하 + 여} \rightarrow \text{해요: 일해요, 운전해요}
\]
**Informal sentence ending** - 

When used with a verb, the informal sentence ending - 

indicates some type of probability. This is an informal version of the pattern - 


겨예요.  

That man/woman is probably a teacher.

거래가 예에 도착할 거예요.  

The train'll probably arrive at the station soon.

**Conjunction of condition or stipulation** -(으)면

The conjunction -(으)면 indicates condition (e.g., "when"), or stipulation (e.g., "if") when attached to the present stem of a verb. (In Korean the dependent clause precedes the main clause, but in English the dependent clause can precede or follow the main clause.) The form -면 is attached to the verb stem ending in a vowel or 

but the form -으면 is attached to the verb stem ending in a consonant.

시간 있으면, 전화하겠다요.  

If I have time, I'll call you.

돈이 있으면, 그것을 사겠어요.  

If I have money, I'll buy it.

공부를 많이 하면, 눈이 피곤해요.  

When I study a lot, my eyes get tired.

There are exceptions to this rule. They are 그으면, 쉬우면, 그러면.

**Sentence ending of obligation** - 

The obligatory sentence ending - 

is equivalent to English auxiliaries such as "have to," "must," or "should." It requires different vowel insertions depending on the nature of the vowel used in the verb stem. 아, 어, and 해 are inserted respectively, after 아/어 vowels and 어/어요 vowels with a consonant ending and after the 

verb. But no vowel is inserted after the verb stem with a vowel ending. The tense is expressed at the end of the verb.

지금 의자에 앉아야 하겠어요.  

Now I'll have to sit in the chair.

저녁을 지금 맛이야 하겠어요.  

I'll have to eat supper now.

**The postposition** -(으)로

This postposition, attached to a noun, refers to the means with which someone does something or by which someone moves (by one's own volition or by vehicle, whether driving or not). There are other uses of -(으)로, which will be introduced later.

-로 (ending in a vowel)  

기차로 by train  

버스로 by bus  

비행기로 by plane  

배로 by ship  

고속버스로 by express bus

-으로 (ending in a consonant)

무엇으로 by what

**Verb stem** 일

The second consonant of this verb stem becomes silent. Thus, the syllable is pronounced as 일.

**Exercises**

9 Assume that you are engaged in the following activities and that someone asks what you are doing. Answer the questions, using -아(이/해)요.

a reading a newspaper  

b playing tennis  

c watching a movie  

d gardening

10 Someone asks if you can take a trip to Italy. Answer the question by saying that you can do it if you have the following things:

a enough time  

b a million dollars  

c an airplane
11 One of your friends wants to spend time with you over the weekend. Tell him or her that you must stay at home because you have three things to do.

12 Tell a friend of yours that you will take a trip to Seoul by the following means:

a ship  
b airplane  
c train

13 A stranger asks you how to get to a certain place. Answer by saying he/she should go by the following:

a bus stop  
b bank  
c library

14 Make your own sentences, using the following words:

a 기차, 오래, 길리다, 서울, 가다  
b 극장, 오른쪽, 가다, 보이다  
c 모퉁이, 지나가다, 우체국, 있다

15 A Korean friend of yours is worrying about getting caught up in the traffic during the rush hour. Explain to him what kind of public transport he should use to get around.

a taxi  
b bus  
c subway  
d limousine

16 You are supposed to meet one of your Korean friends at the back gate of a museum, where you are supposed to go on a date. Translate the following directions. Your friend will follow these from the point when she arrives at the terminal by express bus.

a When you get off the express bus, you will see a big building straight ahead.

b When you pass it on your left, you will see another small building. It's a museum.

c Buy a ticket at the ticket booth.

d Follow the center road straight to the back gate. I will be there.

17 Suppose a foreign traveler is lost in the city and asks you for help. As the traveler has a miniature map of the vicinity, guide him/her to the City Hall, using the traveler's own map.
5 Where are you going?

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
- talk about a trip you’ve made
- use the honorific markers 시/سه
- use the postposition -에 (place and time)
- use the existential verb 있다
- use the honorific subject case marker -께서
- use the sentence ending -(이) 가단요
- use the names of public places and modes of transport

Dialogue 1 ☠ Kim and Kang are talking about a trip to New York City

KIM: 더디 가세요?
KANG: 주말에 뉴욕에 갑니다.
KIM: 뉴욕이 어디 있습니까?
KANG: 여기가 뉴욕입니다.
KIM: 왜로 뉴욕에 가십니까?
KANG: 기차로 갑니다.
KIM: 언제 집에 돌아오세요?
KANG: 다음 주말에 돌아옵니다.
KIM: 그럼, 잘 다녀오세요.

KIM: Where are you going over the weekend?
KANG: I’m going to New York City over the weekend.
KIM: Where is New York City located?
KANG: This is New York City (pointing to the city on the map).
KIM: How (lit. By what type of transport) do you go?
KANG: I go by train.
KIM: When will you come back home?

KANG: I’ll come back next weekend.
KIM: (Well, then,) have a nice trip.

Vocabulary
- 주말 weekend
- 어디 where
- 있다 to be, exist
- 뉴욕 New York City
- 기차 train
- 돌아오다 return
- 뭐로 by what
- 집에 (to) home
- 언제 when
- 다음 next
- 잘 well
- 다녀오다 go and come back (honorific)

Language points

The honorific markers 시/세

As explained in Lesson 3, these markers are used to indicate respect on the part of the speaker to someone who is older or who has a higher position than oneself. Thus, it is not appropriate to use these honorific markers when the speaker is the subject. Examine the following pairs of sentences.

A: 어디 가십니까? Where are you going?
B: 집에 갑니다. I’m going home.

A: 어디 가십니까? Where are you going?
B: 집에 가십니다. I’m going home.

The first response is acceptable, but the second is not.

The postposition -에 (place)

This postposition is attached directly to a place word and is followed by 가다 “to go,” 오다 “to come,” or their compound verbs. It refers to a specific destination.

집에 갑니다. (I’m) going home.
학교에 갑니다. going to school.
도서관에 갑니다. going to the library.
호텔에 갑니다. going to the hotel.
**The postposition -에 (time)**

This postposition also conveys a sense of time, when a time word precedes it. It is equivalent to such English prepositions as “at,” “on,” “in,” etc.

주말에 어디에 가세요?  Where are you going over the weekend?
월말에 집에 가요.   I’m going home at the end of the month.
오후에 도서관에 갑니다.  I’m going to the library in the afternoon.
그 사람은 정오에 와요.  He (lit. the man) is coming at noon.

**The verb of existence  있다**

The verb 있다 indicates existence, location, or possession in various contexts. Listed below are some sentences, in which the verb follows a place. In this case, the verb 있다 conveys location.

도서관은 어디에 있습니까?  Where is the library?
보스턴은 여기 있습니다.  Boston is located (over) here.
한국은 여기 있습니다.  Korea is located (over) here.

이다 should not be confused with the verb 이다 conveying equality. The verb 이다 will be discussed in the next lesson.

**The pronoun 누구 (who)**

When 누구 takes a subject case marker -가, the second syllable -구 gets dropped.

누가 공부합니까?  Who’s studying?
누가 움니까?  Who’s coming?
누가 갑니까?  Who’s going?

But 누구 is used with other grammatical categories such as the verb 이다 and object case markers -을/를.

이분이 누구입니까?  Who’s this person?
누구를 기다리십니까?  Who are you waiting for?

**Exercises**

1. Choose the word which does not belong to the group:
   a. 비행기, 기차, 배, 자전거, 호텔
   b. 짐, 집, 주말, 연말, 월말
   c. 도서관, 뉴욕, 한국, 보스턴, 서울
   d. 도서관, 호텔, 교회, 집, 학교

2. Suppose you know that someone you are acquainted with is going to the following places. How would you respond to the question 그분 어디 가세요? You must use the postposition -에 in your answers.
   a. Seoul
   b. my hometown
   c. New York
   d. Boston

3. You are going to London over the weekend and one of your friends asks how you are going. Respond to the question, using the following:
   a. train
   b. express bus
   c. car
   d. taxi

4. A visitor is lost on the streets of Seoul. He asks you where the following places are located on the miniature map of downtown Seoul (see the map on page 56). Help this person out by answering his questions.
   a. City Hall
   b. subway station
   c. U.S. Embassy

5. Translate the following conversation:

A: Mr. Kim. Where are you going?
B: I’m going to the subway station.
A: Is someone coming?
B: Yes, my brother is visiting us. Tomorrow is my son’s birthday.
A: Really? You must be excited.
6 You are giving some grammar help to someone who is learning Korean. Correct the grammar in these sentences.

a 누가 서울역에 옴니까?
b 서울역 가 저기에 있습니까?
c 뉴욕에 기차로 가요.
d 주마래 친구 집에 가요.
e 친구가 집에 가십니다.

7 You run into your work colleague on a Seoul street. You are curious to know why he is heading towards the British Embassy. Write a realistic dialogue which might have taken place between you and your friend.

**Culture point**
Seoul Railroad Station (pictured opposite), constructed in 1926, is a Renaissance-style building with a huge Byzantine dome. It serves as the epicenter for Korea’s land transport system, where trains travel to all the peninsula’s major cities. Some 100,000 passengers enter and leave Seoul every day. In recent years, major subway lines have been connected with the station, providing passengers with easy access to downtown Seoul.

**Dialogue 2**

Ki Soo Kang runs across Miss Kim on a Seoul street and asks her if she is expecting a visitor

KANG: 김선생님, 어디 가세요?
KIM: 기차역에 갑니다.
KANG: 누가 옴니까?
KIM: 예, 제 아버님께서 고향에서 오십니다.
KANG: 아, 그래요? 아버님 자주 오세요?
KIM: 아니요, 가끔 오세요. 내일이 제 생일이기 때문요.
KANG: 아, 그래요? 언제 돌아 가십니까?
KIM: 보레 돌아 가십니다.

KANG: Mr. Kim, where are you heading?
KIM: I'm heading towards the train station.  
KANG: Who's coming?
KIM: My father's coming from my hometown.  
KANG: Really? Does your father come frequently?
KIM: No. He seldom comes. He's coming because tomorrow is my birthday.  
KANG: Really? When is he going back home?
KIM: He's going back the day after tomorrow.
Vocabulary

말할 어디에 가세요? Where are you going over the weekend?  비가 많이 왔어요. Because it rained a lot!
월말 집에 가요. I'm going home at the end of the month.  친구가 오거든요. Because my friend's coming!
연말 집에 가요. I'm going home at the end of the year.  주말에 집에 가거든요. Because I'm going home over the weekend!

Language points

Deletion of the postposition -에

The postposition -에 indicating location is generally deleted in simple sentences.

한국(에) 가요. I'm going to Korea.  비가 많이 왔어요. Because it rained a lot!
학교(에) 가요. I'm going to school.  친구가 오거든요. Because my friend's coming!
집(에) 가요. I'm going home.  주말에 집에 가거든요. Because I'm going home over the weekend!

However, when attached to time words, it is not subject to deletion. The following sentences without the time postposition are ungrammatical.

주말 어디에 가세요? Where are you going over the weekend?  비가 많이 왔어요. Because it rained a lot!
월말 집에 가요. I'm going home at the end of the month.  친구가 오거든요. Because my friend's coming!
연말 집에 가요. I'm going home at the end of the year.  주말에 집에 가거든요. Because I'm going home over the weekend!

Deletion of subject case markers

The subject case markers explained in Lesson 2 are deletable.

여기 뉴욕입니다. This place is New York.  친구들이 한국에서 왔습니다. Friends came from Korea.
제 친구 옵니다. My friend is coming.  편지가 그향에서 왔어요. A letter came from my hometown.

Honorific/non-honorific verb forms and their usage

So far, we have introduced various verb forms in a rather random fashion. We can now put these variations in perspective to present the general principles for forming them and their relationships as well. The following table shows the general rules for making up the verb forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of expression</th>
<th>Non-honorific</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statement</td>
<td>stem -(아/어)요.</td>
<td>stem -(으) 세요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>stem -(아/어)요?</td>
<td>stem -(으) 세요?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
request stem -(아/어).요. stem -(으)세요.
statement stem -(습)니다. stem -(으)십니다.
question stem -(습)니까? stem -(으)니까?
request NA* stem -(으)십시오.

**Rule 1** If the verb stem ends in a vowel, no additional vowel 으 is inserted between the stem and its ending for the honorific short and long forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Short ending</th>
<th>Long ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다</td>
<td>가세요</td>
<td>가십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하다</td>
<td>하세요</td>
<td>하십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>공부하세요</td>
<td>공부하십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>보세요</td>
<td>보십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rule 2** If the verb stem ends in a consonant, the syllable 숨 is inserted between the stem and its ending for the non-honorific long forms. However, the verb stem ending in a vowel takes only the consonant  너 which can be used as an underneath character.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Consonant ending</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Vowel ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>막다</td>
<td>막으십니다</td>
<td>보다</td>
<td>볼니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있다</td>
<td>있습니다</td>
<td>가다</td>
<td>갑니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>않다</td>
<td>않습니까?</td>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>공부하십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rule 3** The short, non-honorific ending is formed by attaching the endings -(아/어/여)요 to the respective verb stems of dark (어, 여, 교) / bright (아, 오) vowels and 하. This has already been explained in Lesson 4. However, note the following exceptions to this rule:

- 이다    be     이에요
- 아니나  not be  아니에요
- 바쁘다  busy   바뻐요
- 쓰다    write  써요
- 기다리다 wait  기다려요
- 말하다  speak  말해요

Although short and long forms are both used in conversations in Modern Korean, the former is more often used in casual speech.

**Rule 4** Some verb forms use the built-in honorific forms. They do not take honorific insertions -시 or -세, but yield separate lexical entries which are honorific. See page 45 for examples of these verbs.

---

*Note: an asterisk mark (*) above and hereafter means the construction is Not Applicable (NA).*

---

**Exercises**

8 Suppose someone you know very well is going to the following places. Respond to the question 그분 어디 가세요?, deleting the postposition -에 this time.

a. church  b. home  c. station  d. library

9 Tell your friend that you are going to the library at the following times:

a. in the morning  b. in the afternoon  c. at noon  d. in the evening

10 One of your roommates wants to know who is visiting you over the weekend. Answer, using the following:

a. older brother  b. father  c. mother  d. uncle

11 You had to miss a meeting last Monday and your supervisor wants to know why. Give your explanation, based on the following reasons:


12 A group of visitors from different places came to see you to celebrate your birthday over the weekend. One of your friends wants to know where they all come from. Respond, using the following:
a New York  
b Johannesburg  
c Sydney  
d your hometown

13 Make your own sentences, using the following words:

a 한국, 내일, 형님께, 이제, 오세요  
b 제, 이거도요, 원합니다, 생일, 이  
c 지하철, 지급, 계신, 어머님, 역, 가세요  
d 지급, 가, 비, 오게도요, 많이

14 You are giving grammar help to someone who is learning Korean. Correct the grammar in these sentences:

a 주말에 친구 집에 가요.  
b 아버님께 교회에 가요.  
c 친구께서 식당에서 점심 먹어요.  
d 편지이 서울에서 왔어요.

15 Fill in the columns for the following conjugation table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of expression</th>
<th>Non-honorific</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statement short form</td>
<td>자요</td>
<td>(1) 주무세요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 자요</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement long form</td>
<td>(4) 자요</td>
<td>주무십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>주무십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16 In front of Seoul Railroad Station you run across one of your Korean language teachers, who is curious to know why you are there at that point in time. Explain that your father has come from his hometown to visit you over the weekend.
Language points

Sentence expressing an identity

The linking verb ᄆ ᄂ ᄂ ᄂ ᄂ ᄂ ᄂ, as explained in Lesson 2, is a verb that identifies the predicate of a sentence with the subject.

Identity: A (이/가) B 있습니다, A is B.
what is this?
this is a clock.

Identity: A (이/가) B 아닙니다, A ≠ B.
This is not a pencil.
This is a notebook.

The linking verb 아닙니다

The negative counterpart of the linking verb 아닙니다 is noun + 아닙니다. This noun normally takes the subject case marker -이/가 once the noun switches from the predicate to the subject position and assumes the function of the subject of the linking verb. Thus, in this type of negative construction, the same or a different case marker may appear twice. This is called the double subject construction.

Identity: A (이/가) B 아닙니다, A ≠ B
Negation: A (이/가) B (이/가) 아닙니다, A ≠ B

More pointing words

Lesson 4 introduced two sets of pointing words such as 이리, 그리, 저리, and 여기, 거기, 저기. This section introduces two remaining sets of pointing words. The basic meaning is the same as in Lesson 4.

Thing category

이것 이 "this" + 것 “thing” object near the speaker
그것 그 "that" + 것 “thing” object either near the hearer or mutually understood
저것 저 "that" + 것 “thing” object away from both the speaker and the hearer
That's not a pen.
That's not a pencil (near the hearer).
This is a Korean language textbook.
This (person) (honorific) is Dr. Kim (with a doctoral degree).
That (person) (honorific) is Mr. Song.
Who's that (person) (honorific)?

Note that in conversations the final consonant of all pointing words can often be dropped, as in 이거, 저거, 그거. When the subject case maker 이 follows, it may even get contracted into -게.

이것이 ("this" near the speaker) 이게
그것이 ("that" near the hearer) 그게
저것이 ("that" away from both) 저게

The demonstrative modifiers 이, 그, 저

These modifiers can be combined with common nouns.

이 책상 this desk
이 연필 this pencil
저 볼펜 that ballpoint pen
그 학생 the student (near you)

The informal ending -이에요/아니에요

A non-honorific long ending -입니다 is often re-formed as -이에요 in an affirmative sentence and spelled this way. Women and schoolchildren tend to adopt this form, but males prefer to use its base (original) form. When the sentence ending -이에요 comes after a noun ending in a vowel, -이 is usually contracted into -에. Also, note that the negative form of this ending is -아니에요.

그것은 책입니다.
그것은 책이에요.

이것은 책이 아니에요.
이것은 의자입니다.
Exercises

1 An American student points at various objects near you and asks you what they are. Respond to his question.
   a chair
   b newspaper
   c dictionary
   d map

2 Someone asks you what the objects are that he is pointing at. Answer his questions on the basis of the pictures shown:

   a 이것은 책입니까?

   b 이것은 오늘 신문입니까?

   c 이것은 메모지입니까?

   d 이것은 연필입니까?

3 Answer the following questions, looking at the pictures shown below:

   a 저분이 경찰입니까?

   b 이분이 누나이에요?

   c 그분이 남자입니까?
   (pointing to the person on the left)

4 A toddler asks you to identify the pictures she has. Respond to her question, using -이에요.

   a 
   b
KIM: Is there a stapler?
LEE: No, it's not here.
      It's in the next room.
KIM: Do you have any paper clips?
LEE: Yes, I have some here.
KIM: Would you please bring several here for me?
LEE: Yes, I will do so (that way).
      Just a moment, please.
      (A moment later)
LEE: Here they are.
KIM: Thank you, Miss Lee.
LEE: You're quite welcome.

Vocabulary

스테플러: stapler
있어요: have
없으시다: not have
열방: next room
자 여기 있습니까: here it is
고맙다: to be thankful
clip: paper clips
가져다 주다: fetch

Language points

Topic case marker -은/는

We have already studied the subject case marker -이/가, which indicates the subject of a sentence. However, when the subject is introduced as a new topic in comparison with something previously mentioned in the immediate sentences, the topic case marker -은 is attached to a subject ending in a consonant, and -는 is attached to a subject ending in a vowel. The meaning of the topic case marker is roughly equivalent to the English phrase "as for . . . ."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonant</th>
<th>Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>창문은 window</td>
<td>지도는 map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분필은 chalk</td>
<td>의자는 chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책은 book</td>
<td>지우개는 eraser</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
지도는 있어요. As for a map, I have one.
지우개는 없어요. As for an eraser, I don’t have one.
책은 많이 있어요. As for books, I have a lot.

The topic case marker can be contracted to -건, when pointing words precede it.

이것은 *이거는 이건
그것은 *그거는 그건
저것은 *저거는 저건

The verb 있습니다 (있다)

This verb is not always translated to express either location (with a place) or existence, as explained in the previous lesson. There are other English translations derived from it such as “There is/are ...” and “Do you have ...?”

여기에 연필 있어요. Here is a pen.
지우개 есть요. Is there an eraser near you?
지우개 있어요? Do you have an eraser with you?
앞방에 한국어 사전이 있어요? Is there a Korean language dictionary in the next room?
한국어 사전 있어요? Do you have a Korean dictionary with you?

The opposite form of this verb is 없다, which means either “There is/are not ...,” or “Someone does not have something.”

여기에 자 없어요? Is there a ruler (near you)?
아니요. 여기에 없어요. No, it isn’t here.
저 있어요? Do you have a ruler with you?
아니요. 자 없어요.

The postposition -에

This postposition expresses existence when it is used with such existential verbs as 있다, 계시다, 있다, 많다 ("to be many or much"), and 삶다 ("to live"). The meaning of this postposition amounts to “at” or “in.”

그분이 사무실에 계십니다. He/She is in the office.
책상에 교실에 있습니다. Desks are in the classroom.
책상이 교실에 있습니다. There are no desks in the classroom.

휴게실에 사람이 많습니다. There are lots of people in the lounge.
홍식남식당에 계십니다. Mr. Hong is in the restaurant.

The sentence ending -는데요

This ending, which is attached to the verb stem of the sentence, expresses the meaning “but,” and invites some comment or request.

여기에 한국어 사전이 안 있는데요. There is no Korean language dictionary here, but...
그분은 여기에 안 계시는데요. He/she is not here, but...
사무실에 아무도 없는데요. There is no one in the office, but...

Exercises

5 You have bought some office supplies such as a ruler, paper clips, a pen, and an eraser at the stationery store. Your Korean office-mate keeps asking what you have bought. Respond to these questions, using the topic case marker -은/는.

a 자 있어요?
b 한국지도 있어요?
c 클립 있어요?
d 휴게실 있어요?

6 Someone asks you whether a series of objects is nearby. Respond to these questions, based on the pictures given below.

a 거기에 연필 있어요?
7 Imagine you are answering the phone in an office while the following personnel are out for morning break. You want to tell the caller where they are at the moment.

a Miss Lee is at the restaurant.
b Section Chief Thompson is in the lounge.
c The secretary, Miss Hong, is at the snack bar.

8 One of your senior colleagues asks whether you have the following office supplies which he can borrow, but you don’t have any of them. However, you say that you don’t mind looking for them. In this situation, how would you respond to his questions? For new words, refer to the English–Korean glossary at the back of the book.

a Scotch tape
b stapler
c scissors

9 Ask one of your colleagues to bring the following office supplies for you. For new words, look at the English–Korean glossary at the back of the book.

a ballpoint pen
b memo pad
c paper clips
d ink

10 Answer the following questions, according to what you have in your office or room.

a 한국 지도 있어요?
b 볼펜 있어요?
c 봉투 있어요?
d 여제 신문 있어요?
7 Going out for lunch

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>접심하다</td>
<td>have lunch (plain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식사하다</td>
<td>have meals (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아직도</td>
<td>yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밖에서</td>
<td>outside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>같이</td>
<td>together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구내식당</td>
<td>refectory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어렵다</td>
<td>(be) how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값이 싸다</td>
<td>cheap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>음식</td>
<td>meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팬졌다</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Past tense

The Korean past tense consists of a verb stem and an insertion (였,었,였) between the verb stem (or plus the honorific -시 place within the stem) and the ending.

Plain form                      Honorific form

임(verb stem) + 다(ending)          임+시(honorific) + 다(ending)

임 + 였 + 다                      임+시 + 였 + 다

There are three rules that change the insertion of the past tense marker.

When the final vowel of the verb stem is -아/-어, it takes -았

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb stem</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다</td>
<td>갔습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오다</td>
<td>왔습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>보았습니다/받았습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋다</td>
<td>좋았습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많다</td>
<td>많았습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the final vowel is any other vowel, it takes -었

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb stem</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>기다리다</td>
<td>기다렸습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰다</td>
<td>썼습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우다</td>
<td>배웠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치다</td>
<td>가르쳤습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹었습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dialogue 1  ☞ Mr. Kim and Miss Park talk about going out to lunch at a Korean restaurant downtown

강: 박선생님. 접심(식사) 하셨어요?
박: 아니요. 아직 안 했습니다.
강: 그럼, 밖에서 접심 같이 하실까요?
박: 네, 그러시다면. 어디가 좋겠습니까?
강: 구내식당이 어떻겠습니까?
박: 구내식당은 값이 싸고 음식이 팬 있으십시오.

Kim: Miss Park, have you had lunch (meal) yet?
Park: No. I haven’t.
Kim: Well, shall we have lunch outside together?
Park: Certainly. Which place would be good to go to?
Kim: How about going to the refectory? The refectory is cheap and the food is OK.
Park: It sounds good. Let’s go there.
The verb -하다 takes the insertion -했.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb stem</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>식사하다</td>
<td>식사했어요 (하겠어요)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>공부했어요 (하겠어요)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋아하다</td>
<td>좋아했어요 (하겠어요)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The suggestion ending -실까요?**

This ending is equivalent to English suggestion forms “Shall we...?” or “Shall I...?” The Korean form is obtained by adding the ending -실까요 to the verb stem.

여기 앉으실까요? Shall we sit here?
여기서 기다릴까요? Shall we wait over here?
같이 도서관에 가실까요? Shall we go to the library together?

**Another suggestion ending -(ㅂ)시다**

Although this ending is very similar to the one above, it is used to make a suggestion or proposal stronger. The meaning of this ending is equivalent to the English suggestion form “Let’s...” The consonant ㅂ is added to 시다 after the verb stem ending in a vowel, but ㅂ시다 is taken after the verb stem ending in a consonant.

점심 밖에서 합시다. Let’s have lunch outside.
농사 한잔 합시다. Let’s have a cup of black tea.
의자에 앉으시다. Let’s sit on the chair.

**The object case marker -을/를**

This particle, attached to a transitive verb, indicates the object case of the noun. -을 is added after a noun ending in a consonant, whereas -을 is added after a noun ending in a vowel. This object case marker is often deleted in speech.

커피(을) 하셨어요? Did you have coffee?
텔레비전(을) 봤어요? Did you watch TV?
오늘 신문(을) 읽었어요? Did you read today’s newspaper?

**The coordinate conjunction -고**

This conjunction is used to connect two clauses or phrases and is equivalent to “and” in English. In conjoining sentences the subject of one sentence may be different from that of another, although they may share a single topic.

이 식당은 크고 좋어요. This restaurant is big and good.
구내식당은 깔끔하고 The refectory is clean and the
음식값이 싸요. food is cheap.
오늘은 바람이 불고 비가 와요. Today is windy and rainy.

**Exercises**

1. Someone asks you what you did last weekend. Respond, basing your answers on the following activities:
   a) read a newspaper
   b) went to the movie theater
   c) studied Korean

2. You want to suggest to one of your colleagues that you both engage in the following activities during lunch hour. How would you do so?
   a) have lunch outside
   b) have a cup of tea
   c) go to the supermarket

3. Make a stronger suggestion for the activities used in 2, using the ending -(ㅂ)시다.

4. You are curious to know what Miss Lee did over the long weekend holiday. Ask her in Korean whether she did the following things, deleting the object case marker:
   a) went on a date
   b) watched TV
   c) traveled around

5. One of your colleagues asks you if you have had lunch yet, but you have not. Respond to his question by suggesting that you both have lunch at the following places:
a cafeteria  
b Restaurant Sinra  
c Damijung

6 One of your friends asks you why you have been frequenting the Restaurant Sinra lately. You want to explain that it is clean and the prices are cheap. How would you say this in Korean?

7 A few people in your office are wondering where to go for lunch. Suggest to them that the following places might be good to try out:

a refectory  
b snack bar  
c Korean House

8 Translate the following into Korean:

A: Have you had lunch yet?  
B: No, I haven't.  
A: Shall we go out to lunch together?  
B: Certainly.  
A: Would the refectory be a good place to go?  
B: Yes. It's a big place and it's very cheap.

Dialogue 2  ☐ ☐ Mr. Kim and Miss Park enter a restaurant and order a couple of dishes. After enjoying the meal, they pay the check at the front counter

A: Have you had lunch yet?  
B: No, I haven't.  
A: Shall we go out to lunch together?  
B: Certainly.  
A: Would the refectory be a good place to go?  
B: Yes. It's a big place and it's very cheap.

Culture point
A variety of Korean restaurants are scattered throughout downtown Seoul as well as other places. Most of them specialize in serving certain kinds of meals, ranging from fire-burned meats (e.g., Pulgogi and Kalbi) to Kimbap (rice and mixed ingredients rolled with green larva [edible seaweed]). A foreigner not familiar with Korean food may give it a try by dining at a restaurant which serves barbecued or wooden charcoal-grilled meats such as marinated beef and beef ribs. The prices of these menu items may seem somewhat expensive to the first-time diner, but he or she is sure to find them worth the money. It is a good idea for a group of people (or at least a party of two) to dine together at the Pulgogi House (the name of a restaurant). Since many restaurants require two servings of Pulgogi and Kalbi to be ordered. While Pulgogi is being served, a bowl of rice and six or seven different side dishes may accompany it. A tip is not necessary at most restaurants, unless otherwise indicated.

Vocabulary

어서  quickly  차례  (one's) turn
감사합니다  thank you  내다  pay, (or in this context) treat
무엇( 흰 )  what  계산서  guest check
d�다  take  아주머니  waitress (married)
also
-know
rice and beef with
mixed vegetables
and hot paste

Language points

The topic case marker -은/는
This particle indicates an implied contrast or comparison with the information previously mentioned in a sentence. Its meaning is equivalent to the English phrase “as for...” Contrast the following pair of sentences.

저 비빔밥 하지요.  I’ll have Pibimbap.
저는 불고기 백반 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have the Pulgogi dinner.

점심 식사(을) 하셨어요?  Have you had lunch yet?
점심 식사는 하셨어요?  As for lunch, have you had it yet?

The emphatic marker -도
This particle indicates “also” and “too,” and can be attached to almost any word in a sentence. It replaces the subject and object particles.

저 도 가겠습니까.  I’ll go.
저도 가겠습니다.  I’ll go also.
저는 불고기 백반을 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have the Pulgogi dinner.
저도 불고기 백반을 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have the Pulgogi dinner also.

Less polite informal ending -지요
This sentence ending is used informally in sentences of question, statement, and suggestion, which usually invite the listener’s confirmation or agreement. The English equivalent for this ending is “... isn’t it?”, “... aren’t you?” etc.

저는 반두국 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have Wonton soup, won’t I?
저 사람 삼한국이지요?  He (lit. that person) is a Korean, isn’t he?
여기 앉으시지요.  Please sit over here, won’t you?

Korean numbers (1–100)
Korean employs two kinds of cardinal numbers: native Korean and Sino-Korean numbers. The native Korean cardinal numbers (1–100) are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한자</th>
<th>숫자</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하나</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>셋</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넷</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한자</th>
<th>숫자</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>열한</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열두</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열셋</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열넷</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열다섯</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열여섯</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열일곱</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열여덟</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열아홉</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열십</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The native Korean cardinal numbers 하나, 두, 셋, 넷, 스물 are shortened when they are placed before a noun such as a countable noun (person or thing).

Korean numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>품/개</th>
<th>Number + count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하나</td>
<td>한분 one person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>둘</td>
<td>두분 two persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>셋</td>
<td>세분 three persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넷</td>
<td>네분 four persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물</td>
<td>스무분 twenty persons</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-도
-also
-know
rice and beef with
mixed vegetables
and hot paste

도 배반 하지요.  I'll have Pibimbap.
도 놀고기 백반 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have the Pulgogi dinner.
도 놀고기 백반을 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have the Pulgogi dinner also.

도 가겠습니까.  I’ll go.
도 가겠습니다.  I’ll go also.
도 놀고기 백반을 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have the Pulgogi dinner.
도 놀고기 백반을 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have the Pulgogi dinner also.

도 가겠습니까.  I’ll go.
도 가겠습니다.  I’ll go also.
도 놀고기 백반을 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have the Pulgogi dinner.
도 놀고기 백반을 하지요.  As for me, I’ll have the Pulgogi dinner also.
The irregular verb 들다

This verb contains an honorific form and means "take" or "eat" when used in a situation where someone is eating. This final consonant -ㄹ is dropped when followed by the consonant -ㅅ.

식사 많이 드세요. Please eat a lot of food.
할머님은 식사를 많이 드십니다. My grandmother eats a lot of food.

The contracted form 됨

The original, full form is 무엇을 and consists of a wh- (e.g., "what") word and the object case marker. The consonant -ㅅ is dropped before a vowel, resulting in the form 무엇. This form can also be further contracted to one word 됨 in colloquial language settings.

무엇을 드시겠어요? What would you like?
무엇 드시겠어요? What would you like?
함을 드시겠어요? What would you like?

Some useful idiomatic expressions

식사 하셨어요? Have you had a meal?
커피 하셨어요? Had you had a coffee?
이번은 내 차례입니다. This is my turn.
이번은 누구 차례지요? Whose turn is it?
이번에는 내가 내겠습니다. This time I will treat (you).

Exercises

9 Imagine you have stepped into a local Korean restaurant. A waitress dressed in a traditional Korean costume greets you and asks what dish you would like to order. Respond to her question, ordering one dish.

10 When a friend of yours has ordered a Pulgogi dinner and you want to order the same, what would you say to the waitress?

11 Answer the following questions, using the additional information supplied.

a 월 드시겠어요? (cold oriental noodle with hot sauce)
b 낱면 몇 그릇 (how many bowls?) 시키겠어요? (two)
c 몇 분이세요? (three)

12 When a friend of yours has ordered 비빔밥 and you want to order 갈비탕, what would you say to the waiter?

13 Yong Chul Kim, a Korean colleague in your office, has treated you to dinner many times. Now you want to treat him in return. Insist that it's your turn to take him out.

14 Respond to the following questions:

a 아침식사 하셨어요?
b 여지시 저녁식사 하셨어요?
c 무엇을 시켰겠어요?

15 Translate the following into Korean:

A: Please come right in. How many are there in your party?
B: We are a party of two.
A: What would you like to order?
B: We'll order one Pulgogi dinner and one Wonton soup.
A: Please wait a moment.

16 You are giving grammar help to someone who is learning Korean. Correct the grammar of these sentences:

a 칠파이하고 오늘 회사에 출근하지 않았다.
b 볼고기 드게 주세요.
c 식사 많이 들세요.
d Goldsmith 씨가도 김밥을 시켰어요.

17 You've got some extra money and you think that it would be a good idea to buy dinner for your girlfriend, Young Ja. How would you suggest buying dinner for her?

18 You want a waiter to bring the following dishes for you and your company. How would you order them?

a Pulgogi dinner
b rice and beef with mixed vegetables and hot paste
c Wonton soup

19 Reading passage Mr. Goldsmith and Miss Kim work together in an office and they very often go out to lunch nearby. One day she takes him out to a special place for lunch, but he thinks that the lunch he had wasn't so great. Try to figure out what kind of problem he had with his lunch.

어느 날 미스 김은 Goldsmith 씨를 데려 한국식당으로 데려가 갔다. 미스 김은 비빔밥을 시켰고, Goldsmith 씨는 비빔밥을 시켰다. 식당 음식은 달이 싸고 맛이 있었다. 그러나, Goldsmith 씨에게는 비빔밥은 너무 매웠다. 그래서, 다 먹지 않았다.
8 약속하기
Making an appointment

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• Make an appointment with friends
• decline an offer
• tell the time
• learn the conjunctions -는데, -지만, -(으)로
• learn the noun modifier -(으)로
• learn the postposition -(으)로

Dialogue 1

Mr. Kim and Miss Johnson work in the same office. Since Miss Johnson is learning Korean, she often takes the opportunity to try out her Korean by asking Mr. Kim lots of simple questions. One morning, she asks him what he did last night.

존슨: 어제 저녁에 무얼 하셨어요?
강: 친구 집에 갔어요.
존슨: 친구 집에서 무얼 하셨어요?
강: 텔레비전 봤어요.
존슨: 아, 그래요?
텔레비전에서 무슨 프로그램 보셨어요?
강: 미식축구 봤는데, 아주 재미있었어요.
존슨: 저도 미식축구 좋아하세요?
존슨: 아니요, 저는 야구 좋아해요.
미식축구는 가끔 보지만, 빨르면 안 좋아해요.
저는 거친 운동을 싫어해요.

Vocabulary

저녁 night or evening
친구 집 friend's house
텔레비전 TV
미식축구 American football
가끔 sometimes
별로 particularly
Language points

Types of Korean verb

There are four types of verb in Korean. These are action verbs, adjectival verbs, existential verbs, and linking verbs.

Action verbs

These indicate an action or movement performed by the grammatical subject of a sentence.

보다 see 집에서 텔레비전 봤어요. (I) watched TV at home.
먹다 eat 식당에서 점심 먹었어요. (I) had lunch in the restaurant.

Adjectival verbs

These indicate the quality or the condition of the grammatical subject, and are equivalent to English predicate adjectives (e.g., “be good”).

좋다 good 날씨가 좋아요. The weather is good.
바쁘다 busy 김선생은 오늘 바빠요. Mr. Kim is busy today.
많다 many/much 저녁 시간은 많아요. (I) have a lot of free time at night.

Existential verbs

These indicate existence, location, or possession. This kind of verb is likely to be translated into English sentences such “Something exists,” “Someone or something is located in a place,” “Someone has something.”

있다 학생들이 복도에 있어요. There are students in the hall.
지기에도 미국대사관 건물이 있어요. There is a U.S. Embassy building there.
없다 저는 지우개가 없어요. I don’t have an eraser.

be/located

Linking verbs

This kind of verb links a subject with its predicate, indicating equality or identification. It is often called a copula verb.

이다 be 이것은 책이다. This is a book.
아니다 not be 그것은 한국지도가 아닙니다. That is not a map of Korea.

The conjunction -는데

This conjunction is used only with an action verb and the verb 있다. Its meaning can be rendered as “and,” “but,” etc., depending on the context in which it is used.

어제 저녁에 텔레비전 봤는데, 별로 재미 없었어요. I watched TV last night, but it wasn’t that interesting.
신라 식당에서 점심 먹었는데, 음식 맛이 패장었어요. I had lunch in Restaurant Shinra, but the food was good.
미스리 사무실에 있는데, 만나시겠어요? Miss Lee is in her office, and would you like to see her?
요즘은 개인 지도하는데, 아주 힘들어요. These days I am tutoring, but it’s very hard work.

The conjunction -지만

The contrastive conjunction -지만 is used with any verb to connect two clauses that stand in contrast to each other. English equivalents for the Korean conjunction -지만 are “although” and “but.”

그 식당은 값이 비싸지만, 가겠어요. That restaurant is expensive, but I’ll go there (anyway).
The noun modifier - 온

In Korean, the noun modifier functions in the same way as an English adjective. Noun modifiers, usually derivable from descriptive verbs, are put before the nouns they modify. In this case descriptive verbs are changed into noun modifiers by attaching the suffix 온 to the verb stem. Noun modifiers derived from action verbs and the verb of existence will be dealt with in Lesson 11.

- 싸다 cheap
  쓸 물건을 사겠어요. I’ll buy the cheap merchandise.

- 크다 big
  큰 식당은 깔끔해요. A big restaurant is clean.

- 좋다 good
  존은 좋은 책을 샀어요. John bought a good book.

Exercises

1 Underline the verbs in the following sentences and group them according with the four types explained earlier in the lesson.

a 제 동생은 어제 저녁에 텔레비전을 봤어요.
b 이분이 홍선생님이십니다.
c 저 건물 뷰에 지하철역이 있어요.
d 제 친구는 돈이 많아요.

2 Someone asks you about the movie you watched on TV last night. You want to tell them that it was good, but too long. Respond, using -는 데.

3 You went to a newly opened restaurant in your neighborhood. Your friend wants to know how it was. Respond, saying that it was good, but the food was a bit expensive.

4 A colleague asks you what you did at home last night. Respond to his question, assuming that you were engaged in the activities listed below. For new words, look at the English-Korean Glossary at the back of the book.

- a read a book
- b watched a movie on TV
- c did nothing

5 Study the following pairs of sentences which make direct contrasts. Give their Korean equivalents, using the conjunction -지만.

a I studied hard, but I don’t understand the material well.
b I eat a lot, but I’m not fat.
c This merchandise is cheap, but of a good quality.

6 Fill in the blank with appropriate changes in the adjectival verbs:

a ( 좋다 : ) 집은 값이 비싸요.
b ( 크다 : ) 식당이 많아요.
c 그 가게에서는 ( 비싸다 : ) 마지막 갔어요.

7 Respond to each question in Korean, based on your real activity schedule:

a 오늘 저녁에 무엇 하세요?
b 어제 저녁에 텔레비전에서 영화 봤어요?
c 내일 저녁에 식사 약속이 있어요?

Culture point

Koreans, unlike Americans and Europeans, rarely make social or business appointments well in advance. An appointment is usually made a couple of days or some hours prior to the actual event, and foreigners accustomed to the Western appointment system may find it difficult to adapt to the Korean style. One major reason for leaving short notice lies in a desire to avoid making excuses for missing other, more important business which may surface at a later point. That is, it is potentially face-saving. For example, a junior staff member might be thrust into a situation where he has to comply with his superior’s request to do some business with him, although the request conflicts with his prior engagement. Thus, many Koreans feel more comfortable responding to appointments in the order in which they are arranged.

Dialogue 2

One afternoon Mr. Kim asks Ms. Johnson if she has time to go out for dinner in a cozy restaurant downtown.

손: 존슨 씨 오늘 저녁에 시간 있어요?
존슨: 오늘 저녁에요? 오늘 저녁은 안 되겠어요. 제 친구하고 약속이 있어요.
Echoing the question in Korean

To repeat a word or phrase uttered by another person, attach the ending - ね to it. This is done to ascertain what the hearer may have heard that he or she is not sure about. Or one may need a moment to digest what has been said.

내일 서울에 갑니까?  
서울에요?  
한국 대통령이  
소련에 갑니까?  
소련에요?  
내일 저녁에  
시간 있어요?  
내일 저녁에요?

Do you go to Seoul tomorrow?  
Do you mean Seoul?  
Does Korea’s President go to Russia?  
Do you mean Russia?  
Do you have free time tomorrow night?  
Do you mean tomorrow night?

The verb stem -는

This particle is attached after the stem of the verbs 있다/없다, and identifies the location of a place.

명동에 있는 식당은
                 깨끗해요.  
저기 있는 모자는 내 것이다. The hat over there is mine.

Sino-Korean numbers (1–100)

Lesson 7 introduced a system of native Korean numbers. Another system – Sino-Korean numbers (1–100) – is introduced here. They are used when telling the time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>영</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>삐</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>이십</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>삐십</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>일</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>십일</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>이십일</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>삐십일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>이</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>십이</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>이십이</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>사십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>삼</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>십삼</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>이십삼</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>사십일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>사</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>십사</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>이십사</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>오십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>오</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>십오</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>이십오</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>육십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>육</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>십육</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>이십육</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>칠십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>칠</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>십칠</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>이십칠</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>팔십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>팔</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>십팔</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>이십팔</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>구십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>구</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>십구</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>이십구</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>백</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vocabulary

시간   | time
하루   | day
약속   | appointment
저녁식사 | supper
명동   | Myeong-dong

Restaurant Hankaram
work
make a phone call
finish (intransitive)
tomorrow

Language points

The subordinate conjunction - ㄴ(은) 후에

The temporal conjunction - ㄴ(은) 후에 is used to connect two clauses. It is compared to the English expression “after something happens/has happened.” - ㄴ 후에 is inserted after the stem of a verb ending in a vowel, but - 은 후에 is inserted after one ending in a consonant.

공부를 많이 한 후에
극장에 갑니다.
이름 끝난 후에
다방에 갑니다.

After studying a lot, let's go to the cinema.

After work, let's go to the tearoom.

Note that this conjunction can be used as if it had a temporal meaning “after” or “later.”

한 시간 후에 도서관에 가겠습니다.

I'll go to the library one hour later.
Reading hours and minutes

When reading the hour, native Korean numbers are used with the time counter -시. Bear in mind that native Korean numbers 1 through 4 lose their underneath consonant when placed before the time counter.

To say “half-past” an hour, the word 반 is added right after the hourly unit.

However, when reading minutes, Sino-Korean numbers are used along with the word 분.

Another way is to read time when the long hand of the clock points anywhere between 45 and 59 minutes. In this case, the pattern -시 -분 전 is used. In this expression, the word 전 means “before.”

지금 몇 시입니까?
지금 한 시입니다.
지금 여섯 시 반입니다.
지금 일곱 시 십분 전입니다.

What time is it now?
It’s one o’clock now.
It’s six thirty now.
It’s ten to seven now.

The postposition -하고

This postposition is attached after a noun, and is comparable to “with” in English.

오늘 저녁에 친구하고 극장에 가요.
내일은 동생하고 도서관에 가겠어요.

I’ll go to the cinema with my friend tonight.
I’ll go to the library with my brother tomorrow.

Exercises

8 You wish to go on a date with Miss Chang, a colleague in your office, and you want to know when she will be free. Ask her whether she will be available at the following times:
   a tomorrow afternoon
   b tonight
   c at lunchtime

9 Miss Jin, another colleague in the office, wishes to go to the movies with you after work, but you have a busy schedule lined up. What would you say to decline her offer?

10 Read the time on the clocks below:

   a
   b
   c

11 One of your friends tries to lure you to go out to the movies tonight. You want to tell him that you can make time for him after the following events. What would you say?
   a after an exam is over
   b after work is done

12 You want to tell a friend to meet you at a restaurant at the following places. What would you say?
   a at Myongdong
   b at Chongro
   c at Kwanghwamoon
13 Ask a friend to call you at home to set up your next appointment at the following times:

a 3 P.M.  

b 4:15 P.M.  

c 9:10 A.M.  

14 One of your friends asks you if you will be free this Saturday afternoon. Tell him that you have a previous engagement with the following people at the times listed:

a with your younger brother at 10 in the morning  

b with your mother at noon for lunch  

c with friends in the neighborhood in the evening  

15 Respond to each question, based on your real-life schedule:

a 몇 시에 주무신니까?

b 아침 몇 시에 일어나신니까?

c 점심은 몇 시에 드신니까?

d 랜더에서 몇 시에 휴근하십니까?

16 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What did you do last night?  

B: I went to the movie theater with my friends.  

A: Was the movie interesting?  

B: Well, it was, but it was very short.

17 Reading passage Miss Johnson visited Mr. Lee’s apartment where they watched a World Cup soccer game on TV. At that time the Korean team was competing against the Spanish team, and it ended in a draw. Although the game itself was very interesting, they didn’t feel good afterwards. Try to figure out what made them feel uncomfortable at the end of the game.

Johnson 씨는 어제 저녁에 친구 미스터 리 아파트에 갔다. 거기서 미스터 리하고 텔레비전에서 World Cup 축구경기를 보았다. 그 때 한국팀이 스페인팀과 시합을 하고 있었다. 그 경기는 재미있었지만, 무승부로 끝났다. 경기가 끝난 후 많은 선수들이 다쳐서, 두 사람은 기본이 별로 안 좋았다.

Key words

아파트 apartment  

TV  

축구 soccer  

시계 watch  

팀 team  

시합하다 compete  

경기 game, match  

무승부 draw  

끝나다 finish  

다치다 get hurt  

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:

• take a taxi  

• communicate with a Korean driver regarding destination and direction  

• pay a fare, using Korean money  

• use the conjunctions -이고, -아(어)서  

• use the sentence endings -로(를) 수 있다, -시조  

• use the verb -걸리다  

• compound verbs 내려주다 vs. 내려드리다

Dialogue 1 Edward Moon, a designer at the American Toy Company, is visiting Seoul on a business trip. After taking a cab at the taxi-stand in front of City Hall, he enjoys a chat with a Korean taxi driver.

운전기사: 어디까지 가세요?

손님: 동대문까지 갑니다.

운전기사: 이리 타세요.

손님: 네, 감사합니다.

운전기사: 손님은 동대문 어디까지 가십니까?

손님: 동대문 지하철역까지 갑니다.

아저씨, 여기서 동대문까지는 멀어요?

운전기사: 그럼요. 차로 40분 정도 걸리죠.

손님: 그런데, 지하철 궁문들은 무슨 건물을 야요?

운전기사: 오른쪽에 있는 건물은 교보빌딩이고, 왼쪽에 있는 건물은세종문화회관이에요.

손님: 아, 그래요.
Vocabulary

까지 up to
동대문 Dongdaemoon
타다 get on
손님 passenger
don
운전기사 driver
지하철역 subway station
멀다 far
아마(도) probably
아저씨 driver, uncle
(운전기사)

40분 40 minutes
정도 about (roughly)
걸리다 take
건물 building
오른쪽 right side
교보빌딩 Building Kyobo
왼쪽 left side
세종문화회관 King Sejong
Cultural Center

Language points

The particle -에서(부터)

This particle, attached to words of time or place, indicates a starting point in time, or a place from which a physical movement begins.

아침 일곱 시부터 공부합시다. 쌍드시부터 공부할까요? 낯설어서 야주 바릅니다.

Let’s study from nine o’clock in the morning. From when will you study? I’m going to be busy from tomorrow.

The particle -까지

This particle indicates “until,” “up to,” or “as far as,” when preceded by a time expression or a place word.

여디까지 가실니까? 남산까지 갑니다. 두시 반까지 집에 오세요.

Up to where do you go? I go up to Mt. Namsan. Please come to my home by 2:30.

The correlational pattern -에서(부터) -까지

The above two particles can be combined to form a correlational pattern -에서(부터) -까지. Its meaning is equivalent to the English correlational phrase “from... to...”

We had a meeting from 3 to 5.
It rains from today to tomorrow.
It takes one hour by airplane from Seoul to Pusan.

The verb -걸리다

This verb means “takes” in English, when followed by time-related nouns. This verb usually accompanies a certain mode of transportation (e.g., “by car,” “by air,” “by taxi,” “by bus,” etc.).

동대문에서 시청까지 차로 몇 시간 걸립니까?
한 시간 걸립니다. 여기서 시청 앞까지 차로 몇 분 걸립니까?
10분 정도 걸립니다.

How many hours does it take by car from Dongdaemoon to City Hall?
It takes one hour. How many minutes does it take by car from here to City Hall?
It takes about 10 minutes.

The coordinate conjunction -이고

This conjunction is a subtype of the conjunction -고 introduced in Lesson 7. As explained earlier, it conjoins two clauses, phrases, or even sentences which illustrate a series of events. However, the conjunction -이고 is used only when the first sentence takes the linking verb -이다.

이것은 책이고, 이것은 공책이다. 그분은 미국 사람이고, 이분은 한국 사람이다.

This is a book and that’s a notebook. That’s an American and this is a Korean.

The degree word 정도

This word, coming after words of time, means denotes “about,” or “around” in English.

한 시간 정도 지나면 그 사람이 올 것입니다. 삼십 분 정도면 됩니다.

He will come after about an hour. About 30 minutes will do.
Exercises

1 Suppose you take a taxi and the driver asks your destination. Tell him that you are going to the following places:
   a Yongsan Subway Station
   b U.S. Embassy
   c Kimpo Airport

2 Suppose you take a taxi at Chongro and are heading for Dongdaemoon. You are afraid that you may not get there in time for the meeting. Ask the driver how long the journey will take.

3 One of your friends asks you how long it will take him by taxi from City Hall to the following places in Seoul. How would you respond?
   a to Chongak (10 minutes)
   b to Dongdaemoon Stadium (30 minutes)
   c to U.S. Embassy (about 50 minutes)

4 A business acquaintance who lives in Pusan asks you how long it will take him to go from Pusan to Seoul. Tell him that it will take him different amounts of time, depending on what type of transportation he takes:
   a five hours by train
   b one hour by airplane
   c four and half hours by express bus

5 You are pointing to one object near you and another away from you. How would you indicate the following pairs of objects in Korean?
   a pen and pencil
   b computer and blackboard
   c desk and chair

6 While you are in a taxi you pass some modern buildings. Ask the driver what they are:
   a building to your left
   b building to your right
   c the tall building over there

7 Translate the following dialogue between driver and passenger into Korean:

A: Where can I take you to?
B: I am going to the U.S. Embassy in Kwanghwamoon.
A: Which way should I take?
B: You drive up to City Hall and make a right turn there.
A: I see.

Culture point
Most foreigners may feel uncomfortable catching a taxi on the street in Seoul. Taxis do not always wait to pick up a customer at a taxi-stand. They may come to a rather sudden halt wherever people hail them. Understandably, some taxi drivers may refuse to pick up a customer when his direction is different from the one the taxi is heading in. However, the "Mobum Taxi" (Deluxe Taxi) (lit. "exemplar taxi"), which provides a luxurious service (like limousine service common in America) will pick up a customer and take him wherever he wants to go. Anyone who wants to be punctual should use the latter taxi service. Most taxi drivers, except the ones operated by the "Mobum Taxi" company, use the ride-share method and pick up one or two or more customers who are heading in the same or similar direction as the first passenger, often without his consent. Many Korean drivers, including taxi drivers, tend to smoke while driving. In this case, you, of course, have a right to ask them to refrain from smoking during driving. However, some care is needed not to lower and darken their "kibun" – see the Culture point of Lesson 3.

Dialogue 2

Around the time when the taxi has arrived at his destination in Dongdaemoon, Mr. Moon asks the driver to drop him off past the traffic signal near Dongdaemoon Station, where he pays the fare

운전사: 여기가 동대문 지하철역입니다. 여기서 내리시겠어요?
손님: 아니요. 앞으로 좀 더 가세요.
운전사: 자기 네거리에서 내려줄 수 있어요?
손님: 네, 그러시죠. 요금이 얼마입니까?
운전사: 6,300원입니다.
손님: 자, 여기 있습니다.
운전사: 예, 감사합니다.
손님: 그럼, 아저씨 수고하세요.
Vocabulary

내리다  get off  지나다  go by
앞으로  forward  요금  fare
 좀 더  a little further  얼마나  how much
네거리(사거리)  intersection  원  won
내리다  let someone off  여기 있습니까 here it is
신호등  traffic signal  아저씨  driver
수고하세요  goodbye  제과점  bakery

Language points

The conjunction -아/어서

This conjunction is used to connect one action to another. It expresses the close relationship between the two in addition to their temporal ordering. The conjunction is directly attached to the stem of the first verb. Verbs that take this conjunction are limited to verbs implying movement or change of posture. Some of them are 가다, 오다, 지나다, 일어나다, 앉다. However, the conjunction -고 connects two actions of other verbs, and simply expresses the notion of “after” in English.

저는 도서관에 가서  I go to the library and study there.
공부해야요. 
친구가 일어나서  My friend stands up and reads a book.
책을 읽어요.
저기 신호등을 지나서  I’ll get off after the traffic signals there.
내리겠어요.
공부하고 갈어요.

Also note that the tense is expressed in the second verb, but not in the first one.

도서관에 가서  Let’s go to the library and study there. (present)
공부합시다.
도서관에 가서  I went to the library and studied there. (past)
공부했습니다.
도서관에 가서  I’ll go to the library and study there. (future)
공부하겠습니다.

The auxiliary verb -ㄹ(을) 수 있다

This auxiliary verb is equivalent to “can” or “(to) be able to” in English. -ㄹ 수 있다 is attached to a verb stem ending in a vowel, but -을 수 있다 is attached to a verb stem ending in a consonant. The opposite form is -ㄹ(을) 수 없다.

저기서 내릴 수 있다.  I can get off there.
저기서 잠 수 있다.  I can sleep there.
교회에 갈 수 있었다.  I could go to church.
그 책을 읽을 수 없었다.  I couldn’t read the book.

Large numbers and money

Sino-Korean numbers beyond 100, together with the way these numbers are combined with various Korean monetary units, are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>백</th>
<th>천</th>
<th>만</th>
<th>백만</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>200,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>300,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>400,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>500,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>600,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>7,000</td>
<td>70,000</td>
<td>700,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>8,000</td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td>800,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>9,000</td>
<td>90,000</td>
<td>900,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The basic monetary unit in Korea is 원 (won). When amounts are expressed in Arabic numerals, they are preceded by the symbol “w.” There are two kinds of units: coins and paper bills.

Coins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>(w)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>십원</td>
<td>(w10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오십원</td>
<td>(w50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>백원</td>
<td>(w100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오백원</td>
<td>(w500)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Paper Bills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>(w)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>천원</td>
<td>(w1,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오천원</td>
<td>(w5,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만원</td>
<td>(w10,000)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The composite verbs 내려주다 vs. 내려드리다

The composite verb 내려주다 means “let a junior out,” while 내려드리다 means “let a senior out.” So, the verb you use depends on who it is you are letting out of the car.

역 앞에서 내려 주겠어요. I’ll let you out in front of the station. (to junior passenger)
역 앞에서 내려 드리겠습니다. I’ll let you out in front of the station. (to senior passenger)

The contracted sentence ending -시죠

This sentence ending is the contracted form of the less polite informal ending -시지요, which was introduced in Lesson 7. In casual conversation the second syllable -시 is united with the last syllable, where the vowel 이 is dropped. This process yields the contracted form -시죠.

여기서 내리시겠죠? You get off here, don’t you?
여기서 내리시겠죠? You go to the theater tomorrow, don’t you?
내일 극장에 가시겠죠? You go to the theater tomorrow, don’t you?
내일 극장에 가시겠죠?

Exercises

8 The taxi has come near your destination and you want to get out. Ask the driver if he can let you off in front of the following places:
a bakery
b bank
c church

9 The taxi is approaching your destination and you want to pay the fare. Ask the driver how much you need to pay.

10 One of your friends asks you what you are going to do tomorrow. Tell him that you have two things to do, one after the other:
a go to the library and read newspapers
b go to the bar and meet people
11 A friend asks you to do three things for her because she is sick. Tell her that you can do the following things:

a go shopping
b go to the bank
c clean the room

12 Someone you know asks you to lend him a large amount of money. Tell him that you have only ￦14,000 in your pocket.

13 A friend has been to a bookstore and bought the following three articles. Ask him how much he paid for each item.

a book
b notebook
c memo pad

14 You went to the shopping mall and bought a couple of items. A friend of yours asks how much you paid for each item. Respond to her question.

a hat (￦4,000)
b clothes (￦45,000)

15 Respond to each of the questions the driver asks you inside a taxi, using the information given.

a 어디서 내리 드릴까요? (교보빌딩)
b 어디까지 가세요? (서청)
c 제 과점 앞에서 내리시겠죠? (저기 신호등 지나서)

16 You know Mr. Kim very well. He is older than you and senior to you at work. One afternoon you and he have agreed to spend some time at Itaewon. Suggest that he takes a taxi to get there, using the contracted informal ending -시.

17 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: May I drop you off here?
B: No, can you go a little further?
A: I can’t stop over there.
B: Then, can you let me off past that intersection?
A: Of course.
B: How much is the taxi fare?
A: It’s ￦6,700.

18 Reading passage Edward Moon visited Seoul on a business trip. He took a taxi from the airport to Hotel Shinra, because he was a stranger to Seoul. But he was not very happy when he realized that it took him much longer than usual. Try to figure out what made him feel unhappy.

Edward Moon 씨는 사업차 서울을 방문했다. 서울거리를 잘 몰라서 공항에서 택시를 탔다. 운전기사 아저씨는 영어를 할 수 없어서, 그는 한국말로 했었다. 신라호텔까지는 보통 1시간이 걸리지만 이번에는 2시간이 걸렸다. 운전기사 아저씨가 김을 잘못 들어 시간이 더 많이 걸렸다. 그래서 택시비도 두배 많이 지불해야 했다.

Key words

사업차 on business
방문하다 visit
거리 street
모르다 do not know
공항 airport
운전기사 driver
신라호텔 Hotel Shinra
걸리다 take
길을 enter the
 잘못 들음 wrong way
택시비 taxi fare
double
지불하다 pay
10
물건사기
Shopping

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• do basic shopping at a Korean market
• negotiate prices
• know where you can shop in Korea
• use the long negation form -지 않다
• use base, comparative, and superlative structures
• use the contrastive conjunction -(으)나
• use the sentence endings -르(을) 것 같다, -(은/는)데요,
  -르(을)게요.

Dialogue 1 ᵀ-nine Minsoo Lee and John Whitman have been close friends since they started working at an importing company a number of years ago. One Saturday afternoon, Minsoo suggests to John that they go shopping at a large department store.

민수: 존, 오늘 오후에 쇼핑 같이 가겠어요?
존: 좋아요. 어디로 가겠어요?
민수: 남대문 시장이 어떨까요?
존: 남대문 시장은 물건이 대체로 좋지 않아요.
민수: 그럼, 어디가 좋겠어요?
존: 신세계 백화점이 남대문 시장보다 더 좋을 것 같아요.
민수: 백화점은 값이 비싸지 않아요?
존: 값이 비싸지만, 질은 아주 좋아요.
민수: 그럼, 신세계 백화점으로 가요.

Vocabulary

오후 afternoon 보다 더 (better or worse) than
쇼핑 shopping 값 price
남대문 시장 Namdaemoon Market 비싸다 expensive
Market

Language points

The long negative form -지 않다

Lesson 1 introduced the short negative form of most Korean verbs, namely -안. However, another way to negate a verb is to attach the long form -지 않다 to the stem of the verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Long negative ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>분명하다</td>
<td>clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분명하지 않다</td>
<td>unclear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말하다</td>
<td>speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말하지 않다</td>
<td>not speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놀다</td>
<td>play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놀지 않다</td>
<td>not play</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although most verbs can take either form of negation, certain verbs commonly take the long form rather than the short one.

공부했습니다 studied (X) 안 공부했습니다
공부하지 않았습니다

서 있다 be standing (X) 안 서 있다
서 있지 않다

X = ungrammatical sentence, O = grammatical sentence

The particle - 만큼 for base comparison

This particle is attached to the noun, which is used as a base for comparison. It indicates extent, degree, or “as much as.”

이 가방은 저 가방만큼 크다. This bag is as big as that bag.
내 친구는 나만큼 키가 키요. My friend is as tall as I am.

The comparison particle 보다 (더)

This particle is used to express the equivalent of English “than.” When -보다 is used, the use of 더 is optional.
한국말이 영어보다 (더) 쉬워요. The Korean language is easier (to learn) than English.
기차는 차보다 (더) 빨라요. The train runs faster than the car.

**The superlative word of an adjectival verb**

In order to indicate the greatest degree when three or more items are compared, adjectival verbs in Korean can take the superlative words (제일, 가장).

이것이 제일 (가장) 비싸요. This thing is the most expensive.
롯데백화점이 가장 좋어요. Lotte Department Store is the best.

**The sentence ending - 른(을) 것 같다**

This sentence ending is used with any type of verb and indicates the likelihood of a certain event. Its meaning is equivalent to the English expression “is likely to be,” “might do…” - 른(을) 것 같다 is inserted after a stem ending in a vowel, but -을 것 같다 is inserted if the stem ends in a consonant.

이것이 비쌀 것 같다. This thing seems to be expensive.
그 학생이 책을 읽을 것 같다. The student seems to be reading a book.
여기가 시청일 것이다. This place seems to be City Hall.

**The adjectival verb 어얄다**

This verb literally means “to be (some way),” “to be (what way),” or “to be (how).” English translations of this verb may vary, depending upon the context used. It is irregular in the past, present, and future tenses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>어얄다 be (how)</td>
<td>어얌요</td>
<td>어얌이요</td>
<td>어얌겠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오늘 날씨는 어얌요?</td>
<td>How is today's weather?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소풍은 어얌이요?</td>
<td>How was your picnic?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내일 미도파 백화점이 어얌겠어요?</td>
<td>How about (going to) Midopa Department Store tomorrow?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Look at the pictures and answer these questions:

a 어느 사람이 가장 동통해요?

b 어느 연필이 가장 길어요?

c 어느 차가 가장 값어요?

5 At a general goods store you have looked at a number of items. Although they are good-quality merchandise, you are not interested in buying them because they look expensive. Tell a salesman that the following items look expensive:

- a necktie
- b shoes
- c T-shirt

6 Suggest to a friend of yours that he go shopping at the Midopa Department Store.

7 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: Would you go shopping with me this afternoon?
B: I'm a little bit busy this afternoon.
A: Well then, how about tomorrow?
B: I am free tomorrow.
A: Call me after work tomorrow.

Culture point
Price haggling is a well-known phenomenon at most Korean stores such as those in Itaewon, one of the busiest shopping districts in Seoul, which is frequented by foreigners. Although it is difficult to see the rationale behind this practice, many Korean shopkeepers customarily make the customer feel good by giving them a discount for the merchandise they purchase! However, don't feel too pleased about the discount because in most cases Korean merchants may have already raised the price of the merchandise by the same margin. Shoppers may end up paying the right price for the merchandise after the discount has been given. It is also possible that they may be left to pay more than the original price should it be raised by more than the amount of the discount. However, foreigners who shop at department stores may not get a discount, and should assume all merchandise is to be sold for the marked price. It is usually a good idea to shop at department stores at a certain time of the year when they set out bigger bargains for a sales promotion.

Dialogue 2  00  Mr. Lee and Mr. Whitman arrive at the General Goods Store in Dongdaemoon and go into the luggage section. A saleswoman welcomes them with a beaming smile

일원: 어서 오세요. 위 채울하세요?
민수: 정가량 좀 볼 수 있어요?
일원: 보세요. 빨간 것, 파란 것, 노란 것 여러 가지가 있어요?
존: 이 빨간 가방은 얼마예요?
일원: 이란 오천 원입니다.
그 가방은 잔한 씨나, 디자인이 안 좋어요.
민수: 이 노란 가방은 어떠세요?
일원: 그 가방은 튼튼해서 값이 비싸요.
오만 사천 원입니다.
민수: 너무 비싼데요. 좀 깔을 수 없어요?
일원: 가만히자. 그럼, 깔아서 사면 원만 내세요.
민수: 야가씨, 크레디트카드 받으세요?
일원: 물론 받지요.
존: 제 것도 찾아 주세요. 지는 현금으로 낼게요.
일원: 네, 좋습니다. 삼만 원만 내세요.
존/민수: 감사합니다.
Vocabulary

어서    quickly
찾다  look for
جمال  luggage bag
빨간(것)  red (thing)
파란(것)  blue (thing)
노란(것)  yellow (thing)
여러 가지  many kinds
cheap  design
strong  sturdy
너무    too much
내다    pay
크레디트 카드  credit card
받다    accept
현금    cash
물론    of course
<stdlib  cut down
가만있지  let me see
점원    salesperson

Language points

The ≈ irregular verbs

The stem of certain verbs drops ≈ when it modifies to a following noun.

빨간다  red
빨간 가방  red bag
빨간 것  red thing
파란다  blue/green
파란 가방  blue/green bag
파란 것  blue/green thing
노란다  yellow
노란 가방  yellow bag
노란 것  yellow thing

When it has been mentioned in the previous sentences, in the above color-modified words, 가방 can be replaced with the pronoun 것.

The contrastive conjunction -(으)나

The contrastive ending -지만 (“although,” “but”) was introduced in Lesson 8. Here is another ending of the same kind which is somewhat less colloquial than -지만. It connects two clauses which contain contrasting values. -(으)나 is used after a verb stem which ends in a vowel, while -(으)는 is used after a verb stem ending in a consonant.

이 물건은 종으나 시지 않겠어요.
지금 바쁘냐 김선생을 만나겠어요.

Although this merchandise is good, I won’t buy it.
Although I’m busy, I’ll meet Mr. Kim.

The exclamatory ending - 놀/늘(은/는)네요

This sentence ending is used to indicate interest, surprise, delight, and other emotions shown by both the speaker and the hearer. The ending - 놀/늘(은)네요 is attached to adjectival verbs and to the verb of identification 이다, while the ending - 는네요 is used in other verbs.

싸다  cheap  이 책은 값이 싸네요.  This book is cheap!
작다  small  이 교실은 작네요.  This classroom is small!
있다  be  이것은 한국어책네요.  This is a Korean book!
가다  go  내 동생이 거기에 가네요.  My younger brother goes there!

The particle 만

This particle can be attached to almost any word in a sentence. It expresses exclusivity and is equivalent to “only.”

그 책만 주세요.  Give (me) only that book.
동물원은 오늘만 문을 닫아요.  The zoo closes only today.

The sentence ending - 으(을)게요

This ending, when attached to the stem of any action verb and the verb 있다, expresses the speaker’s intention in a casual conversation.

오늘 저녁은 제가 냅게요.  I’ll treat you tonight.
저는 냉면을 먹을게요.  I’ll have cold noodles with hot paste.
이 가방은 현금으로 지불하게요.  I’ll pay for this bag in cash.

Exercises

8 You are at a luggage store and want to have a look at four bags of different colors. Ask the storekeeper how much each bag is:

a  yellow bag
b  red bag
c  blue bag
9 You are at a clothing store and you want to have a look at a couple of shirts. Ask the storekeeper whether you can do so:

   a blue T-shirt
   b red T-shirt
   c yellow T-shirt

10 You think that the price of a T-shirt sounds too much, and you want to barter the price down. Ask the salesman whether he can give you a discount on it.

11 You want to buy the sturdy-looking piece of luggage which the sales assistant has brought out for you. Tell him that you won’t buy it (because it is expensive), although it is a good luggage bag.

12 You think that the price of the following merchandise is too high. Tell the saleswoman that it is too expensive, using the informal sentence ending -대로.

   a purse
   b pair of socks
   c red hat

13 The store owner puts out a T-shirt, a pair of sox, and a blue bag. Tell him that you want to buy only the blue bag.

14 You want to buy a pretty hat at the store and pay for it. Tell the salesman that you want to pay in cash. Use the casual sentence ending -께요.

15 You are helping someone who is learning Korean with their grammar. Correct these sentences:

   a John은 요즘 도서관에서 안 공부한다.
   b 저기가 있는 반바지 주시겠어요?
   c 빨간은 바지 사겠어요.
   d 저 풀른 가방은 어떻어요?

16 Translate the following dialogue into Korean.

A: May I look at some school bags?
B: Certainly. Which color would you like?
A: I’d like white, please.
B: These are white ones. These bags look nice and durable.
A: How much is this brown bag?
B: It’s ₩45,000. But I’ll give you a big discount since you are a student.
A: Thanks very much.
11 주말여행
Weekend trip

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
- talk about a trip to Korean cities
- make a ticket reservation
- use the sentence endings -ㄹ(을)까 하다, -(으)면 됩니다
- use the conjunctive proposition -하고
- use the relative clause marker -ㄴ(을)/눈/ㄹ(을)
- use the progressive tense form -고 있다
- use the conjunctive postposition -하고
- use the days of the week
- use the particle -(으)나

Dialogue 1  Jane Smith is a freelance writer on the Seoul Press where Thomas Moon, a Korean-American, works as editorial assistant. One Friday afternoon she runs across him by the office elevator

문: 이번 토요일하고 일요일에 무엇 하세요?
제안: 글쎄요. 설악산에 갈까 합니다.
문: 아, 그리세요. 무엇으로 가세요?
제안: 비행기나 기차로 갈까 해요.
문: 기차가 더 편하고 안전하거든요. 언제 떠나세요?
제안: 토요일 새벽 6시 30분에 떠날까 해요.
문: 기차로 여기에서 설악산까지 얼마나 걸리지요?
제안: 약 3시간 걸리지요.
문: 갈다가 언제 오세요?
제안: 일요일 저녁에 늦게 돌아올까 해요.
문: 그럼, 잘 다녀 오세요.

Vocabulary

이번에 this time
토요일 Saturday
일요일 Sunday
설악산 Mount Sorak
비행기 airplane
기차 train
편하다 comfortable
안전하다 safe
떠나다 leave
새벽 late
돌아오다 return
d아니오다 go and come back
천만에요 you’re (quite)
welcome
어리기를 by what

Language points

The sentence ending -ㄹ(을)까 하다

This ending is used to indicate a speaker’s tentative plans about something. It is always used with action and 있다 verbs. -ㄹ(을)까하다 is used after a vowel, but -ㄹ(을)까하다 is used after a consonant.

일요일에 시내 구경을 나갈까 합니다.
내일 오전에는 극장에 갈까 해요.

I’m planning on touring around downtown on Sunday.
I’m planning on going to the theater tomorrow afternoon.

The particle -(으)나

This particle, when attached to a noun, indicates a selection or option. It is equivalent to “or.”

부산이나 경주에 가겠어요. I’ll go to either Pusan or Kyongju.
연필이나 펜을 빌리 주세요. Please lend me either a pencil or a pen.

The conjunctive postposition -하고

This conjunction is used to connect two or more nouns, and is equivalent to “and.” It is attached to the first noun.
오늘하고 내일은 비가 올겁니다. Today and tomorrow it rains.
교실에 책상하고 의자가 많이 있어요. There are many desks and chairs in the classroom.

**The compound verb** 갈다 오다

This verb phrase literally means “going to a certain place and coming back from there,” and is equivalent to “have been to,” or “have come back from.” Note that the tense is reflected in the second element 오다.

어디 갔다 오세요? Where’ve you been?
학교에 갔다 였습니다. I’ve been to school.
롯데백화점에 갔다 왔어요. I’ve been to Lotte Department Store.

**Days of the week**

월요일 Monday 금요일 Friday
화요일 Tuesday 토요일 Saturday
수요일 Wednesday 일요일 Sunday
목요일 Thursday

오늘은 무슨 요일입니까? What day (of the week) is it today?
수요일입니다. It’s Wednesday.

**Exercises**

1 A friend of yours asks you what you are going to do over the long holiday weekend. Tell him that you are considering doing these things:

a sightseeing in downtown Seoul
b going to Chejudo by air
c going swimming

2 You are standing at the bus stop and someone asks which bus goes to Itaewon. Tell him that either #35 or #56 goes there.

3 Circle the correct particle:

a 연필(이나, 나) 책을 샀어요.
b 신세계 백화점(이나, 나) 미도파 백화점에 가겠어요.
c 시장에서 모자(이나, 나) 구두를 사겠어요.

4 You are giving an American who has recently joined your company some bus scheduling information. Tell her that two buses go to the following places:

a #23 and #45 (City Hall)
b #46 and #67 (U.S. Embassy)

5 You are at the train station and a passenger asks you which train goes to Pusan. Tell him that the trains indicated below will probably go there at the following times:

a 새마을호 at 10:30 A.M.
b 무궁화호 at 3:35 P.M.

6 You run across a friend of yours on Broad Street in downtown Seoul, and she asks you where you have been. Tell her that you have been to the Midopa Department Store.

7 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What are you going to do this weekend?
B: Let me see. Maybe I will go to Chejudo by air.
A: Are you going to meet someone there?
B: Well, my uncle lives there.
A: Oh, I see. Have a good trip.
B: Yeah, I will.

8 Fill in the blanks in this dialogue:

A: 어디 갔다 오세요?
B:
A: 거기서 무얼 샀어요?
B:
A: 거기 물건 같은 샀어요?
B:
A: 나도 다음에 시간 나면, 거기 가봐요.
B:
Culture point
Mount Sorak is a popular tourist resort which a foreign traveler should not miss visiting. This mountain is famous for its steep peaks of granite, cut sharp by nature, and for the beautiful valleys beneath it. Its multicolored maple foliage in the autumn season attracts an especially large number of not only domestic, but also foreign, tourists. Designated as part of the Mount Sorak National Park by the Korean government, it includes first-rate hotels, inns, convenience stores, parking lots, and other public facilities, including camp sites. A cable car 3,610 foot (1,100 meters) long connects the Park entrance to the top of the mountain. Other points of interest in the outer area of Mount Sorak are Pisondae Plateau, from which an angel is said to have ascended to heaven, and Osaek mineral water, which many Koreans drink, hoping to be relieved of digestive ailments. Tourists can use various means of transportation to get to this resort area. From Seoul, it takes about one hour by air and four hours by train to get to Mount Sorak.

Dialogue 2 The next morning Jane Smith gets to the station and buys a ticket to Mount Sorak

Jane: 사표를 어디서 구하요?
Traveler: 저기 체크구에서 구합니다.
Jane: 감사합니다.

(Jane approaches the ticket window)

Jane: 설악산행 표 한 장 주세요.
Ticket Seller: 여기 있습니다. 설악산가는 기차는 두시에 있어요.
Jane: 설악산행 열차는 몇번 플랫폼 홈에서 출발합니까?
Ticket Seller: 6번 홈에서 떠납니다. 1시 45분까지 타셔야 합니다.
Jane: 옳게 알았습니다.
Ticket Seller: 지금 6번 홈에 열차가 들어오고 있는데요. 그 열차에 타시면 됩니다.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>설레합니다</td>
<td>excuse me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차표</td>
<td>train ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔다</td>
<td>sell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매표구</td>
<td>ticket booth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장</td>
<td>counting unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>검</td>
<td>for tickets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counting unit for tickets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train platform</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

The dependent noun -행
This noun is attached to the traveler’s destination. The English equivalent of this is “bound for a certain place.”

부산행 기차표 ticket to Pusan
서울행 기차표 ticket to Seoul
미국행 비행기표 ticket to America

The noun counter -장
This counter, when attached to numerals, is used to count paper or tickets of any type. It is equivalent to the English expression “a piece of.” The combination of the numeral and the counter must follow the thing(s) being counted.

종이 한 장 two pieces of paper
열차표 세 장 thirteen train tickets
비행기표 두 장 two airline tickets

The relative clause marker -ㄴ/은/는/을
We have introduced the noun modifier -ㄴ/은, used with adjectival verbs, in Lesson 8. This indicates a quality, quantity, or the extent of the noun modified. This modifier, however, can also be used to relativize the adjectival verb of a sentence to the main sentence.

집이 좋은 사람 the person who has a good house
키가 크다 the person who is tall
When the relative clause marker is attached to the stem of the action verb, it indicates the *past tense*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>지나갔다</td>
<td>passed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 버스</td>
<td>→ 지나간 버스 the bus which passed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도서관에서 공부했다</td>
<td>+ 학생 → 도서관에서 공부한 학생 the student who studied at the library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽었다</td>
<td>read the book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 학생</td>
<td>→ 책을 읽은 학생 the student who read the book</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

But when the action verb is relativized, the relative clause marker `-는` is taken to indicate the *present tense*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>지나가다</td>
<td>pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 버스</td>
<td>→ 지나가는 버스 the bus that passes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도서관에서 공부하다</td>
<td>+ 학생 → 도서관에서 공부하는 학생 the student who studies at the library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽다</td>
<td>read the book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 학생</td>
<td>→ 책을 읽는 학생 the student who reads the book</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To indicate the *future tense* the relative clause marker `-을(을)` is used with action verbs as well as with adjectival verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>지나가다</td>
<td>pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 버스</td>
<td>→ 지나갈 버스 the bus which will pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도서관에서 공부하다</td>
<td>+ 학생 → 도서관에서 공부할 학생 the student who will study at the library</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The progressive tense form -고 있다**

This ending, preceded by action verbs, expresses the notion of continuing an action or process. Here again, the tense is reflected in the second element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>학생들이 그때 도서관에서 공부하고 있었어요.</td>
<td>Students were then studying at the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지금 기차가 역에 들어 오고 있어요.</td>
<td>Right now, the train is entering the station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>버스가 정류장에 들어 오고 있었어요.</td>
<td>The bus was entering the station.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The sentence ending -(으)면 됩니다**

This ending, when used with any type of verb, expresses a speaker’s suggestion for a hearer to engage in some appropriate action in a given situation. The English equivalent of it is “All you have to do is . . .”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>지금 열차에 타시면 됩니다.</td>
<td>You only have to get on the train.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저를 따라 오시면 됩니다.</td>
<td>You only have to follow me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 책을 읽으시면 됩니다.</td>
<td>You only have to read the book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises**

9 Assume you need to buy three tickets bound for the following places. Ask a clerk at the ticket booth to issue them for you.

a one ticket for Pusan  
b two tickets for Kyongju  
c three tickets for Kwangju

10 At the crowded station you need to get a train ticket bound for Mount Sorak. Ask a passerby where you can get one.

11 Ask the clerk at the ticket booth to give you just one ticket for Pusan.

12 You notice that a train is just arriving at platform #6. Ask people around you whether the train will go to Pusan.

13 Someone calls you at home and asks what you are doing. Tell him that you are doing the following:
a reading today’s newspaper
b talking with friends
c doing nothing

14 A passenger hurries into the station and asks around to find which train goes to Kyoungju. You are sure that train #101 on platform #7 is about to leave for Kyoungju. Tell him all he needs to do is to get on that train.

15 You are helping someone who is learning Korean. Correct the following grammar:
a 지금 들어 왔은 기차가 부산에 갑니다.
b 도서관에서 잡지를 읽근 학생들은 공부를 잘한다.
c 기차를 타온 손님들은 미국 사람들이다.

16 Rearrange these words to make meaningful sentences:
a 있어요, 미국에, 비행기, 가는, 10시에
b 부산, 있어요?, 고속버스, 몇 시에, 가는
c 지하철, 수친행, 있어요, 새 시에

17 You are on a local train bound for Pusan and a Korean passenger sitting nearby asks you a number of questions. See how many questions you can answer:
A: 어디까지 가세요?
B: 
A: 어느 역에서 타셨어요?
B: 
A: 이 기차는 몇 시에 부산에 도착합니까?
B: 

18 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
A: What are you going to do over this weekend?
B: I will probably go to New York City.
A: How do you get to New York City?
B: By car.
A: When are you planning to return?
B: I will return by late Sunday night.

19 Reading passage Thomas Moon took a train to Kwangju, where one of his brothers lives. Although it took him some hours to get there, the trip wasn’t too uncomfortable. After
In the bank

Dialogue 1  ❚❚  James Park, an intern at a major Korean stock exchange company, wants to open a general account at a Korean bank nearby. A bank teller instructs him what to do.

행인: 어떻게 오셨어요?
박: 예금을 하려고 왔어요.
행인: 무슨 예금으로 하시겠어요?
박: 보통예금으로 하겠어요.
행인: 우선 이 표에 성함과 주소를 기입해주세요. 
박: 비밀번호와 날짜도 적으셔야해요.
박: 어떤 도장이 없으니까 서명을 하겠어요.
행인: 그럼, 도장칸에 서명을 하세요.
박: 예, 잘 알겠습니다.
(한참후에)
박: 다 기입했습니다.
행인: 저기 소파에 앉아서 잠깐만 기다려 주세요.
박: 그렇게 하지요.
행인: 손님, 통장 여기 있습니다.
박: 예, 감사합니다. 수고하세요.
행인: 안녕히 가세요.

Vocabulary

예금  savings  비밀번호  PIN number
예금하다  deposit (verb)  날짜  date
보통예금  general (bank)  적다  write
보통예금계  account  도장  wooden stamp
우선  first of all  칸  column
표  slip  서명  signature
성함  name (honorific)  소파  sofa
주소  address  잠깐만  for a moment
입 길하다  fill in  통장  passbook

Language points

The purpose ending -(으)려고

This ending is used with any action verb and indicates the purpose of the subject. The English equivalent of this phrase is “in order to.” The suffix 으 is inserted after the verb stem ending in any consonant (apart from ㄹ).

이 선물을 동생에게 주려고 샀습니다.  I bought this gift for my younger brother/sister.
예금을 하려고 은행에 갔습니다.  I went to the bank to make a deposit.
차를 사려고 돈을 빌렀어요.  I borrowed money to buy a car.

The conjunctive particle -와/과

This particle is interchangeable with -하고, explained in Lesson 11, although the former is more widely used in written Korean.

교실에 책상과 의자가 많아 있어요.  There are many desks and chairs in the classroom.
John은 미도파 백화점에서 모자와 구두를 샀다.  John bought a hat and shoes at the Midopa department store.

The causal conjunction -(으)니까

This conjunction is used with all verbs and indicates the cause and effect relationship between the first and second clauses in a
sentence. The English equivalent is “because,” “as,” “since.” Although this conjunction is interchangeable, as explained in Lesson 3, the conjunction -(으)니까 differs from the conjunction -(아/여)서 in that the latter pattern cannot be used when the second clause involves some type of request.

Since it’s snowing, let’s go into the room.
Since TV wasn’t interesting, I didn’t watch.
Since the baby is sleeping, let’s be quiet.

**Months of the year**

Sino-Korean number words are used for the months of the year. Another word, 월, is used to indicate “month.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>월</th>
<th>January</th>
<th>월</th>
<th>July</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>월</td>
<td>February</td>
<td>월</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>월</td>
<td>March</td>
<td>월</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>월</td>
<td>April</td>
<td>월</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>월</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>월</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>월</td>
<td>June</td>
<td>월</td>
<td>December</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Days of the month**

The reading of days of the month consists of Sino-Korean number words and another word, 일, to indicate “day.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>일</th>
<th>4월 20일</th>
<th>일</th>
<th>6월 14일</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>5월 29일</td>
<td>일</td>
<td>7월 14일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>8월 29일</td>
<td>일</td>
<td>9월 30일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>10월 5일</td>
<td>일</td>
<td>11월 3일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>12월 8일</td>
<td>일</td>
<td>13월 8일</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Years**

For days of the year, Sino-Korean number words are used. Another word, 년, is used to indicate “year.”

**Note:** An asterisk (*) indicates the irregular Sino-Korean numbers 6 and 10.

**Exercises**

1. You have bought a couple of gifts for your family at the Midopa Department Store. A friend of yours asks you who you bought them for. Respond to his question:

   a. a pair of socks for your younger sister
   b. ballpoint pen for your uncle
   c. T-shirt for your grandmother

   1990년 3월 12일 March 12, 1990
   1994년 6월 13일 June 13, 1994
   오늘은 몇 일입니까? What day of the month (date) is it today?

2. You happen to meet someone you know well at the local bookstore, and she asks what you bought there. Tell her that you bought a dictionary and a pen.

3. You missed the staff meeting at the place you work, and your supervisor asks you why you did not attend the meeting. Tell him that, since you were sick, you couldn't get to the meeting.

4. You quit reading the book you bought a few days ago, and a friend of yours, who happened to know about this, asks you why. Tell her that, since it was no fun, you gave up reading the book.

5. You come out in the middle of a show at the movies, and the man at the entrance asks you why you did not stay till the end. Tell him that, since it was no fun, you came out in the middle.

6. A child visiting your home starts shouting while a baby is fast asleep nearby. Ask him to be quiet, since the baby is sleeping.

7. Answer each question, based on real life:

   a. 언제 태어났어요?
   b. 오늘은 몇 일입니까?
   c. 어제는 몇 일이었습니까?
8 Look at the following calendar, marked with various events happening in May:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>월화</th>
<th>수목</th>
<th>금토일</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>15 (movie)</td>
<td>16 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>23 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>30 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(gym)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(picnic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(dance party)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a 몇 일에 체육관에 갑니까?
b 몇 일에 영화관에 갑니까?
c 댄스파티에는 무슨 요일에 갑니까?

9 You are at the bank and a teller asks what she can help you with. Tell her that you want to open a savings account.

10 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What can I help you with?
B: I came here to open a savings account.
A: Just fill out the form there.
B: All right.

11 Complete the following dialogue:

A: 무슨 예금 하시겠어요?
B: 
A: 도장 있어요?
B: 아니요, 저는 미국인이니까, 도장이 없어요.
A: 
B: 예, 다쳤습니다.
A: 
B: 예, 알겠습니다.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>어떻게</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현금</td>
<td>cash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현금을 찾아</td>
<td>withdraw money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>필요하다</td>
<td>need (something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없다</td>
<td>don’t have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청구서</td>
<td>withdrawal slip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>액수</td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그리고</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>서명하다</td>
<td>sign one’s name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가능하면</td>
<td>if possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만원 찍리</td>
<td>worth 10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>won</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지폐</td>
<td>paper bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행원</td>
<td>bank teller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아가씨</td>
<td>Miss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Culture point

The unit of Korean currency is the won (₩). There are 1, 5, 10, 50, 100, and 500 coins, while paper bills come in the following amounts: 1,000, 5,000, and 10,000. Koreans do not use checks, as Americans and Europeans do: instead, they use cash in their daily transactions. When they need to carry a large amount of cash for some business transaction or other, they have to convert cash into bank-certified checks whose minimum unit is ₩100,000. A foreign traveler can have foreign currency or traveler’s checks cashed into Korean won at the foreign currency booth of any authorized bank, including foreign exchange banks. He or she can use several Korean branches of American banks in downtown Seoul. The exchange rate fluctuates on a daily basis, but is around ₩800 per dollar. In recent years, the rate has usually run a little under ₩800. A current exchange rate at an English bank fluctuates around ₩1,200 per pound.

Dialogue 2  ❄️

On another occasion James Park runs out of money and wants to withdraw some cash from his savings account. He gets some assistance from the teller in charge.

행원: 어떻게 오셨어요?
박: 현금을 찾아 왔는데요.
행원: 약금을 찾아왔다면, 도장과 통장이 필요해요.
박: 예, 통장은 있는데, 도장이 없는데요.
행원: 그럼, 이 예금 청구서에다가 액수를 기입하세요.
그리고, 서명을 하세요.
박: 잘 알겠습니다. 이제 다 됐습니다.
가능하면, 만원 찍리 지폐로 다섯 장 주세요.
행원: 그럼, 자기 소파에 앉아서 잠깐만 기다려 주세요. 
(한참 후에)
행원: James Park 손님, 여기 통장과 돈을 가지고 가세요.
박: 예, 감사합니다. 아가씨, 수고하세요.
행원: 안녕히 가세요.
Language points

Another purpose ending -(으)러

This phrasal ending is used with action verbs and indicates the purpose of an action. It is usually accompanied by such verbs as 가다, 오다, or other composite verbs combined with these two. This ending also signifies “in order to” in English.

저금을 하려 여기에 왔다. I came here to make a deposit.
학생들이 잡식 먹으러 식당에 갔어요. Students went to the restaurant for lunch.
학생들이 공부하러 도서관에 갔어요. Students went to the library to study.

The intentional/conditional ending -(으)려면

This ending combines -으려고 and -면, and translates as “If one is going to do something (i.e., if one intends to do something), then . . .” It is usually used with action verbs.

돈을 찾으러면 은행에 가야해요. If you want to withdraw money, you have to go to the bank.
연필을 사러면 문방구점에 가야해요. If you want to buy pencils, you have to go to a stationery store.
예금을 하려면 비밀번호를 적어야해요. If you want to make a deposit, you have to write the PIN number.

The postposition -에다가

This postposition, when attached to nouns, indicates a specific surface on (or onto) which something is written. The English equivalent of it is “in,” “on,” or “onto.” The final word -가 can sometimes be deleted.

공책에다(가) 쓰세요. Please write in the notebook.
예금정구에다가 억수를 쓰세요. Please write the amount on the withdrawal slip.

The noun suffix -(짜리)

This noun suffix, when attached to monetary units, indicates “a thing worth . . .”

백원 짜리 두장 two w100 bills
만원 짜리 세장 three w10,000 bills
이십만 짜리 열장 ten $20 bills

The sentence ending -(이) 필요하다

This ending literally means “something is needed.” Although in a Korean sentence this verb takes two kinds of subject (a person and a thing), the second subject becomes the object in its English translation.

나는 연필이 필요하신데요. I need a pencil.
동장을 개설하려면, You need a wooden stamp if you wish to open an account.
도장이 필요해요.

Exercises

12 Someone asks you where the members of staff in your office went during their lunch hour. Tell him that each individual went to the following places to do the following things. Use the conjunction -(으)려 in your answer.

a Mr. Kim went to the bank to withdraw some cash.
b Section Chief Lee went to the staffroom for a break.
c Secretary Hong went to the payroll office to pick up her pay check.

13 A friend of yours lost her purse somewhere in the supermarket. Advise her to go to the cashier’s desk.

14 A friend of yours doesn’t know what to do in order to withdraw cash with his check book. Advise him to write in the PIN number and sign his name on the form. In your answer, use the postposition -에다가.

15 You are in a bank and want to withdraw w65,000 in cash. Tell the teller you’d like five 10,000 won units and three 5,000 won units.
16 You meet a foreigner at a local bank and you notice that she is at a loss as to what she needs in order to open a savings account. Advise her that she needs the following things:

a a wooden stamp
b passport
c PIN number

17 Rearrange the words to make sense.

a 찐으려면, 예금을, 필요해요, 도장이
b 이름만에, 적으세요, 비밀번호도, 쓰시고, 도장을
c 찐리, 만원, 필요해요, 다섯장

18 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: How can I help you?
B: I came here to make a deposit.
A: Just fill out the form over there.
B: All right.

19 Complete the dialogue:

A: 어떻게 오셨어요?
B:
A: 얼마 찐으시겠어요?
B:
A: 그럼, 저기 청구서에다가 액수를 쓰세요.
B:
A: 잠깐만 기다리세요.
B:

20 Reading passage One Saturday morning, James Park goes to the bank near the hotel where he is staying. He wants to withdraw some cash, but is told that he needs to show some sort of proof of his identity. So, he goes back to his hotel room, then hurries back to the bank. But when he arrives at the bank, it is closed. Try to figure out what problem he ran into and what he had to do.

어느 토요일 오전이었다. 제일금융회사에서 일하는 James Park 씨는 현금을 찐으러 근처에 있는 은행에 갔다. 예금을 찐으러면, 여권이 필요했다. 그러나, 여권은 호텔방에 놓아두고 왔서, 현금을 찐을 수가 없었다. 그래서, 다시 호텔방에 가서 여권을 가지고 은행에 금회 갔지만, 은행은 문을 닫았다. 기분이 별로 좋지 않았다.
Meeting friends at a Dabang

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
- make an apology
- talk about daily routines with friends
- use the conjunctions -기 전에, -기 때문에
- use the double past tense -있(았)었
- use the modification marker -을(을)
- use the sentence endings -아(어/여)다, -군요
- use the particle -전에
- use the stative verb 마다
- use the postposition -한테

Dialogue 1 ☛ At a Dabang (Korean tearoom) Jane Adams runs into Dal Hoon Lee, a university student she has recently met. He is late for a meeting because of heavy traffic.

JANE: I'm sorry, I'm late.
DAL: It's late because of the traffic jam.
JANE: Is there any possibility of traffic congestion?
DAL: No, there is no possibility of traffic congestion.
JANE: He is late for a meeting because of heavy traffic.

Language points

The temporal conjunction -기 전에

This conjunction, when attached to the action verb stem, indicates “a time before the present.” It is equivalent to the English expression “before one does something,” or “before doing something,” as in the sentence “He returned home before it rained.”

비가 오기 전에 집에 갔다. Let’s go home before it starts to rain.
오후 전에 회의에 갔다. Let’s go to the meeting before we’re late.
분만이 되기 전에 교황에 가겠다. I’ll go to my hometown before the year’s through.

The particle 전에

This is used with the word for the various time units (“minutes,” “hours,” etc.) and indicates “at a time before the present.” It is equivalent to “ago.”

기차가 오기 전에 도착했어요. The train arrived five minutes ago.
한시간 전에는 남씨가 아주 좋았어요. The weather was very good even an hour ago.
The double past tense marker -었(았)었

The past tense marker -었 can be used twice when some event is completed prior to another event in the past. It can also be used when the completion of an event has no effect on the sentence uttered.

그분은 3년 전에 결혼했어요. 
두 시간 전에 김선생님이 여기에 왔어요.
한국에 있을 때, 한국 음식을 많이 먹었습니다.

He had married (someone) three years ago.
Mr. Kim had come here two hours ago.
While in Korea, I used to have Korean food a lot.

Another causal conjunction -기 때문에

This conjunction connects two sentences forming a cause and effect relationship. It is interchangeable with the conjunctions -아/어/여서 and -(으)니까, explained in Lessons 3 and 12.

요즘은 학기말이기 때문에 지금 바빠요.
Since these are the last days of the semester, I am extremely busy.

김과장님은 회의가 있기 때문에 지금 바빠요.
Since President Kim has a meeting, he is busy right now.

차가 고장이 난기 때문에 늦게 왔어요.
Since the car was broken down, I came late.

But this form cannot be used with a request sentence.

(X) 비가 많이 오기 때문에 밖에 나가지 마세요. Since it's raining heavily, don't go outside.

The stative verb 많다

This verb refers to a great quantity of things or persons. It is equivalent to “much” and “many.” But the verb is subject to various changes in form in a sentence. The adverb 많이 and the adjective 많은 are derived from this verb.

교실에 학생들이 많아요. (verb)
많은 학생들이 교실에 있어요. (adjective)
교실에 학생들이 많이 있어요. (adverb)
There are many students in the classroom.

Exercises

1 You are late for an appointment with your friend at a Korean tearoom (Dabang). Apologize to him.

2 Your boss asks you why you were late for a business meeting this morning. Tell him that because the traffic was terrible, you couldn't make it on time.

3 Someone is looking for the foreman (Mr. Kim), and you think that you saw him in his office only a few minutes ago. Tell him that he was in his office just a short time ago.

4 You and some colleagues go for a picnic. In the middle of the picnic the sky suddenly turns cloudy and threatens to rain. Tell the others to go inside the building before it starts raining.

5 Correct your friend's grammar:

a 지금 비는 왜서 안으로 들어 갑시다.
b 바람이 많이 불기 때문에 건물 안에 들어 가세요.
c 학생들이 교실에 많아.
d 이사장님은 많은 돈이 있다.

6 Rerrange the words of the dialogue to make sense:

a 날리면서, 교통이, 서울역, 여전히, 혼잡하다, 언제나
b 학생들이, 데모해시, 시내에서, 복잡하다, 교통이
c 서울에서, 먹었어요, 많은, 한국음식을

7 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: I'm sorry to be late.
B: That's all right.
A: I took the bus, but it couldn't go fast because the traffic was congested.
B: That's too bad. Were university students rioting?
A: Oh, no. There was a traffic accident in front of City Hall.

8 Complete the dialogue:

A: 이제 어디 갔어요?
B:
A: 교통은 밀려지 않았어요?
B: 보통 때보다 두 시간 더 걸렸어요.
A: 교통사고가 난었어요?
B: 학생들이 데모를 했어요.

**Culture point**
Koreans are generally flexible about keeping appointments. It is not uncommon to show up well over 30 minutes late for an appointment, whether business or personal. One of the major reasons for their flexibility seems to be deeply rooted in their past lifestyle. Not long ago, only a very small percentage of Koreans owned a car. The majority of Koreans had to rely on public transport whose hourly operations were extremely unpredictable. Thus, for many years, they had to live with the reality of never really knowing when they would arrive. Although nowadays over 60 percent of Seoumites own a vehicle of one type or another, their past experience is well ingrained in their modern lifestyle. Even if one has a car, appalling traffic conditions on Seoul streets cause a whole set of new problems. To minimize this sense of uncertainty, a foreigner is advised to use the subway, one of the easiest means of public transport, which runs at pre-scheduled times. Korean subways are also clean and quiet, and make stops at every major point in Seoul.

**Dialogue 2**
Jane begins to understand why Dal Hoon has been so busy lately when he mentions that he is tutoring his younger brother in English every week.

여종업원: 안녕하세요? 월 드시겠어요?
제인: 저는 인삼차 한 갸 하겠습니다.
달훈: 저는 물라 한 갸 하겠습니다.
여종업원: 예, 곧 곁다 드리겠습니다.
달훈: 요즘은 어떻게 지내세요?
제인: 그저 그렇게 지내요. 달훈씨는 어떻게요?
달훈: 요새 방학이지만, 할 일이 많아요.
제인: 무슨 일이 그렇게 많아요?
달훈: 내 동생한테 영어 개인지도를 해야해요.
제인: 일주일에 몇 시간씩 가르쳐요?
달훈: 4시간씩 가르쳐요.
제인: 아, 그래요. 학원갔군요.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>들다</td>
<td>have (food)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>인삼차</td>
<td>ginseng tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>요즈음</td>
<td>these days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그저 이렇게</td>
<td>so-so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>요새</td>
<td>lately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>방학</td>
<td>vacation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>할 일</td>
<td>things to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무슨 일</td>
<td>what kind of work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그렇게</td>
<td>like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한테</td>
<td>to someone (younger person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개인지도</td>
<td>tutoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일주일</td>
<td>one week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치다</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4시간씩</td>
<td>every four hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>힘들다</td>
<td>difficult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Two forms of the verb “to bring something for someone” in Korean

These are 같다추나 같다 든이다. 같다추나 is used when a speaker requests something for himself or when he gives something to someone who is younger or lower in social status. However, 같다 든이다 is used when a speaker does so for someone whose social status is higher or to anyone present to whom he wants to look polite.

물 좀 갖다 주세요.
네, 곧 갖다 드리겠습니다.
이 책 저분한테 갖다 드리세요.
Please bring me some water.
Yes, I'll bring it right away.
Please take this book to him over there.

The postposition -한테

This postposition is used to indicate the receiver of a certain action of a verb. It accompanies a person. Note that the postposition -에게 is interchangeable with -한테.

누구한테(에게) 편지 써어요?
영어한테(에게) 편지 써어요?
Who did you write a letter to?
I wrote the letter to my older brother.

The obligation ending -야(여/여)야 되다

This ending is used to express an obligation or necessity in respect of a certain event, when attached to the verb stem of the sentence. It is interchangeable with the ending -여야 되다.

지금 이 음식을 먹어야 해요.
내일은 날씨가 좋아야 해요.
Now I have to eat this food.
Tomorrow's weather should be good.
메일 개인 지도를 해야 해요.
I have to do private tutoring every day.

The noun particle -씩

This particle is attached directly to a number or to any number made with the noun counter. It means “each,” “respectively,” “apiece.”

하루에 두 시간씩
한국어 공부해야.
학생들은 셋씩
도서관에 와요.
I study the Korean language for two hours every day.
Students come to the library in groups of three.

The modification marker -ㄹ(을)

This marker is used when a noun follows action and adjectival verbs, and indicates the future tense.

바서 물이 없어요.
일을 많이 많아요.
이번 주말에 할 일이 많아요.
There is no water to drink.
There are many books to read.
I have a lot of work to do this weekend.

The exclamatory ending -군요

This ending is used with any verb and indicates a speaker's delight, wonder, astonishment, or surprise. It is interchangeable with -ㄴ(는/은)군요 explained in Lesson 6. The suffix 는 can be inserted when an action verb precedes.

오늘은 눈이나 많이 오는군요!
어제 일이 있었군요.
It's snowing a lot today!
Yesterday was Sunday, but you went to school!
17 Translate the following dialogue into colloquial English:
A: How've you been doing these days?
B: I've been busy.
A: What kind of work makes you that busy?
B: I've got lots of meetings these days.
A: Oh, really? It must be very tiring.

18 Complete the dialogue below:
A: 요즘은 바쁜 일이 있어요?
B: 
A: 무슨 일이 그렇게 많아요?
B: 알주임에 몇 시간씩 가르치세요?
B: 
A: 그렇, 합들겠군요.

19 Reading passage  
Jane meets a friend of hers at a Dabang (Korean tearoom). She is very late. After talking together about something to do over the weekend, she goes home. Because of the traffic problem, she changes her mind and goes home by taxi instead of by bus. Try to figure out what kind of weekend plan they discussed and why Jane took a taxi home.

Key Words

어 느 금요일 저녁에 친구와 다방에서 만났다. 친구가 30분 늦게 왔어서 많이 기다려야 했다. 친구는 커피를 마시고, 제인은 글을 하고 잠자리를 한 장 마셨다. 둘은 주말여행에 관심이 있어서 했다. 집으로 돌아오는 길에 버스를 타는데, 교통이 막혀서 버스가 움직일 수 없었다. 그래서, 도중에 버스에서 내려서 택시를 타고 집으로 돌아왔다.
At the hotel

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• check in at a hotel
• use the long negation form -지 못하다
• use the sentence endings -밖에 없다, -아(여/여)보다, -로
• use the postposition -(으)로

Dialogue 1  Mr. Anderson and his friend, Mr. Taylor, try to check in at a hotel for a couple of nights. They prefer to take rooms with single beds at an affordable price.

 김수계: 어서 오세요. 몇 분이십니까?
 안더슨: 두 사람이니까, 방 있어요?
 김수계: 오시기 전에 예약하셨어요?
 안더슨: 아니요, 예약하지 못했어요.
 김수계: 그래요, 잠깐만 기다려세요.
 아니, 방이 몇 개 있습니다.
 그렇게, 침대방은 없고 온돌방밖에 없는데요.
 태일라: 안더슨, 온돌방이 편찮겠어요?
 안더슨: 나는 온돌방에서 못 자는데요.
 태일라: 그럼, 다른 호텔로 가 보겠습니다.
 김수계: 예, 다음에 또 들러세요.

Language points

The long negation form -지 못하다

Two ways of negating Korean verbs have been introduced. These were -안 (short form) seen in Lesson 1 and -지 않다 (long form) seen in Lesson 10. In this lesson another negative marker 못 is introduced. This negative ending, mostly used with action verbs, indicates “one’s failing or inability to do something,” as in the sentence “John failed to pass the test because he didn’t study hard.” There are two forms of negation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Short form</th>
<th>Long form</th>
<th>Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다</td>
<td>못 가다</td>
<td>가지 못하다</td>
<td>unable to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>못 먹다</td>
<td>먹지 못하다</td>
<td>unable to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽다</td>
<td>못 읽다</td>
<td>읽지 못하다</td>
<td>unable to read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The negative sentence ending -밖에 없다

This ending, followed by a noun, means “nothing but,” “only.”

교실에 여학생밖에 없습니다. There are only girls in the classroom.
온돌방밖에 없습니다. We have nothing but the Ondol rooms.

The compound form -아(여/여) 보다

This form is used to express a trial or experiment by the action verbs of a sentence, as in “Do you want to try on this sweater?” The tense is reflected in the second verb 보다, meaning “to see how it is.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>예약하다</th>
<th>make a reservation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>방</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몇 분</td>
<td>how many persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(honorific)</td>
<td>(honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>온돌방</td>
<td>room with built-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stone heat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>랜불다</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다른</td>
<td>different</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8 The hotel clerk asks you whether you can take the Ondol room (floor-heated room). Tell him that you can’t sleep on the Ondol floor.

9 A hotel clerk says that all the rooms are booked for the night. Suggest that you and your friend go to another place across the street.

10 Reorder the words of the dialogue to make sense:
A: 두개, 첨대방, 있어요?
B: 여기는, 없으니까, 첨대방이, 여관으로, 다른, 가 보세요
A: 그렇, 있어요?, 온돌방은
B: 세개, 온돌방은, 있습니다, 예

11 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
A: How many are you?
B: We’re three.
A: Would you (mind) check(ing) into the Ondol room?
B: No. Since we’re foreigners, we’ll check into rooms with beds.
A: We don’t have any rooms with beds.
B: Really? We’ll go to the other hotel nearby.

Culture point
There are lots of modern hotels in downtown Seoul. If you buy a tourist map of Seoul city at a newsstand, you can easily locate these hotels on the map because they are marked in both Korean and English. The major ones providing good quality, Western-style service are the Sinpa Hotel, Chosun Hotel, Hotel Lotte, and Seoul Hilton Hotel, to mention only a few. These hotels are equipped with modern facilities such as all-year-round heating and air-conditioning, in-house restaurants and bars, laundry, beauty and barber shops, and agencies offering domestic travel services and foreign exchange services.

You can choose between various classes of hotel, depending on your travel budget. Deluxe hotels such as the Chosun or the Seoul Hilton have rooms ranging from $400 (double) up to $500 a night, while first-class hotels such as Sinpa and Lotte charge an average of $300 a night for a double. Of course, second- and third-class hotels charge much less, at $100 a night. All rooms have private bathrooms, two single beds or one double bed, phones, radio and TV sets, and closets.
You don’t have to be afraid, even if your Korean isn’t good enough, to have a brief conversation with a Korean waiter or waitress. Most hotel personnel (if not all) are able to speak some English, and they are also trained to help foreign travelers.

It is always a good idea to study the pamphlets for foreign tourists in Korea before you get there. These pamphlets are usually available at any of the Korean Consulate offices, located in the major cities of the U.S.A. Your knowledge of hotels and of other tourist needs and interests will help make your choice easier and your stay more enjoyable.

Dialogue 2 Mr. Anderson and Mr. Taylor go to an inn across the street and succeed in checking into a big room with two single beds

**Vocabulary**

여관 inn  
모르겠다 do not know  
다 있다 have all  
저희들 we (humble)  
(하고) 싶다 want/wish  

**Language points**

**The sentence ending - 을(을)지 모르겠다**

This ending changes the final verb and is used to incorporate an interrogative or “if” -sentence into a main sentence. The English translation is “One knows/doesn’t know whether/if+sentence.” With all action verbs, it expresses the future tense.

언제 회의가 있을지 모르겠다. I don’t know when the meeting is held.
그 분이 집에 있겠지 몰라요. I don’t know whether he will be staying home.
그 일이 어떻게 될지 모르겠다. I don’t know how that work will turn out.

**The sentence ending - 고 싶다**

This ending expresses a speaker’s wish to do something. It is equivalent to the English infinitive phrase “want to do,” or “would like to do.”
The noun particle - 호실

This particle, when attached to a Sino-Korean number, indicates a room number.

3호실이 어디니까?  
102호실은 어느 쪽인니까?  

Where is room #3?  
Which is the way to (Which direction is) room #102?

Exercises

12 A colleague asks you if you know when a staff meeting will be. Using -지물라고, tell her that you do not know.

13 Next month you expect to get a huge bonus in your pay check. A friend of yours wonders how you will spend it. Tell her that you want to spend it by doing the following things:

a buying a new suit  
b buying a birthday gift for your girlfriend  
c buying three books

14 Before arriving at the hotel, you made a room reservation. Ask the clerk what number your room is.

15 One of your friends checked in prior to your arrival at the hotel. At the hotel counter you wonder which room he checked into. Ask the clerk his room number.

16 A group of foreigners are at the hotel counter, and you are there as an interpreter for them. Ask the clerk whether there are rooms with beds available for five people.

17 Tell the clerk that you need two rooms with beds and one Ondol (floor-heated) room.

18 Translate this dialogue into Korean:

A: Do you have any rooms with beds in this hotel?  
B: No, we’ve only Ondol rooms here.  
A: How much do you charge for one Ondol room?  
B: It’s ￦30,000.

19 Complete the following dialogue:

A: 이 여관에 침대방 있어요?  
B:  
A: 두개만 주세요.  
B:  
A: 한 방에 3만원짜리 없어요?  
B:  
A: 그럼, 한 방에 4만원짜리 주세요.

20 Reading passage  

Mr. Anderson was about to check in at the hotel reception. But he could not check in because he forgot to bring something that he was supposed to have with him. So, he made a phone call to a friend who knew where it was. With his friend’s help, he cleared up the problem. Try to figure out what he forgot to bring with him and how his friend helped him.

关键是

출장가다  go on a business trip  
숙박부  number  
여권  information sheet  
서랍  room with  
check in (at a hotel)  
passport (Western-style)  
drawer  

beds
15 한국의 날씨
Korea's weather

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• talk about characteristics of Korea's four seasons
• use the nominalizing suffix -기
• use the sentence endings -는 때가 있다, -네요
• use the compound verbs -러 가다/오다, 아(어/여)지다

Dialogue 1 Roy Kim has recently arrived in Seoul and is talking with his tour guide, Jenny Lee

로야: 한국의 기후는 어때요?
제냐: 대체로 따뜻하고, 사계절이 분명해요.
로야: 볼은 언제부터 시작되세요?
제냐: 볼은 3월부터 시작되요. 볼이 되면 꽃이 피기 시작해요.
로야: 3월에는 눈이 오는 때가 없어요?
제냐: 그림해야 3월이면 벌써 따뜻해져요.
로야: 미국에서는 4월에도 눈이 오는 때가 있어요.
제냐: 그래요? 평창히 줄겠네요.
로야: 예, 줄지요. 그래서, 사람들이 여름이 빨리 오기를 기다려요.

Vocabulary

기후 weather
따뜻하다 warm
사계절 four seasons
분명하다 distinctive
봄 spring
언제부터 since when
월(달) month
눈 snow
눈이 오다 it snows
설씨 already
미국 America
평창히 extremely

Language points

The nominalizing suffix -기

This suffix is attached to the stem of action verbs and expresses the gerund (“-ing”) or “to”-infinitive in English.

시작하다 begin 시작하기 beginning
공부하다 study 공부하기 studying

The nominal marker converts a verb into a noun equivalent, so that the nominalized expression -기 functions grammatically like a noun. Thus, it can be taken as either the subject or object of certain types of verb. Here are a few examples where -기 is used as the object of a verb:

시작하다
비가 오기(를) 시작했다.
그는 아침을 먹기 시작했다.
가다리다.

사람들은 비가 멈추기를 기다려요.
학생들은 수업이 끝나기를 기다렸어요.

The sentence ending -는 때가 있다

The suffix 는, when attached to the stem of action verbs, modifies the noun 때 (“time”) and means “there is a time when someone does something.”

Jane is often late for school.

제냐: 학교에 지각하는 때가 많아요.
4월에도 눈이 오는 때가 있어요. It sometimes snows in April.
Another exclamatory ending -네요

Two exclamatory endings have been introduced so far: -은/는데요 in Lesson 10 and -(는)군요 in Lesson 13. Here is another ending of a similar kind which indicates a speaker's delight, wonder, surprise, etc.

학생들이 많이 지각했습니다! Many students are late!
106번 버스가 지지대 오네요! Bus #106 is coming over there!
내일은 날씨가 좋네요! Tomorrow's weather will be good!

Exercises

1 You are standing in the hallway, and someone you know asks what you are up to. Tell him that you are waiting for the following people to come out of a meeting in progress:
   a Jane Kim
   b Thomas Moon
   c Teacher Lee

2 You have been very busy and haven't seen one of your friends for weeks. He asks what kept you so busy. Tell him that you have started the following:
   a reading a Korean novel
   b studying the Korean language
   c dating a girlfriend

3 A Korean student asks you what the weather is like in April in your hometown. Tell him that, even in April, it sometimes snows.

4 You are delighted because the bus you were waiting for just came to a halt at the station. Say that bus #123 just came in.

5 You are at a meeting and you realize many of your colleagues are absent. Show your surprise.

6 Correct your friend's grammar:
   a 그는 여름이 오기 전에 가다니다.
   b 감자가 비가 오기 전에 시작했다.
   c Jane은 내일은 술을 많이 마시온 때가 있다.

7 Rearrange the words of the dialogue so they make sense:
   A: 눈이, 지역도, 여름에, 오는, 있다
   B: 오기를, 가을이, 사람들은, 기다려요
   C: 한국의, 사계절은, 기후가, 분명하다

8 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
   A: What are Korean summers like?
   B: It's usually hot.
   A: Does it rain a lot?
   B: Yes, it rains a lot because there's a monsoon in the summer.

9 Complete the following dialogue:
   A: 한국의 가을 날씨는 어떠세요?
   B:
   A: 사람들은 가을에 무얼 해요?
   B:
   A: 수영하려 가는 사람들 있어요?
   B:

Culture point
Korea's weather belongs to the temperate zone and its four seasons are quite distinct. The warm spring weather is heralded by gold-banded lilies blooming from mid-March in the southern region to early April in the central region, which includes Seoul. A sudden cold wave in spring may, however, take many people by surprise. Summer begins in June when the Korean peninsula is under the influence of the monsoon. The Korean summer is notorious for its long rainy spell, which usually takes up the whole of July. “hot and humid” is characteristic of Korea's summer weather. It is during this season that typhoons may at times threaten to inflict heavy damage on the Korean peninsula. After the dreary days of summer, autumn arrives. Its weather is very mild and the sky high and clear. Travelers must not miss the ripening Korean apples and pears in the orchards in autumn. Winter usually begins in mid-November in the northern region. At times heavy snow may accumulate but for the most part winter is dry and cold.

Dialogue 2  ○ ○ Roy asks Jenny about Korea's autumn weather
로이: 한국의 가을 날씨는 어떠세요?
제니: 가을 날씨는 맑고 시원해요.
The question word 어ndon

This word modifies the noun which follows it. Its translation depends upon the context. For example, in a declarative sentence the word means “certain or some,” but in a question it means “what kind of...”

어ndon 학생들은 도서관에서 공부하고 있어요. Some students are studying at the library.
어ndon 학생이 목도에 있어요. A certain student is standing in the hall.
어ndon 학생이 목도에 있어요? Which student is standing in the hall?

The personal pronoun 우리

Koreans tend to use 우리 (“we”) to indicate their family relationships with someone, instead of using 저/나 (“I”). They believe that a sense of collectivity or sharing about one’s family is extended not only to the home itself, but also to other social institutions (e.g., school, company, restaurant, etc). Therefore, the Korean personal pronoun 우리 translates into English as “we” or “I.”

우리는 내일 저녁에 놀LICENSE요. Please come and visit my home tomorrow evening.
우리라는 내일 아주 바빠요. We are very busy tomorrow.
우리 회사 직원들이 일이요일에 소풍가요. The staff of our company go on a picnic (on) Sunday.

The compound verb ending -아(여/여) 지다

This verb ending is attached to the stem of the verb and adds a dependent meaning to the given verb. It indicates a process of change or “becoming” from one condition to another.

많다 many 빌어지다 become more → 사람들들이 빌어졌어요. The number of people increased (lit. became larger)
길다 long  걸어지다 become longer → 여름이 되면 날이 길어져요. When summer comes, the
days get longer (lit. when
it becomes a summer, the
daylight became longer)
예쁘다 pretty 예뻐지다 become prettier → 요즘 그 여학생 얼굴이
예뻐졌어요. She's became more pretty
recently (lit. these days
she became prettier)

The sentence ending -ㄴ(은/는) 것 같다

This ending is attached to the stem of the verb and means “It
seems/appears to be...” When the suffix -ㄴ(은) is attached to
descriptive verbs and the linking verb (이다/이다), it expresses
the present tense. But when the same suffix is attached to action
verbs, it expresses the past tense. Finally, the suffix -는 is used with
action verbs to create the present tense.

이것은 비싼 것 같다. This seems (to be) expensive.
오늘은 날씨가 좋은 것 같다.
저 사람은 한국 사람인 것 같다.
저 사람은 한국 사람이 아닌
것 같다.
그 학생이 책을 읽은 것
같아요.
John이 미국에 돌아간 것
같아요.
바에 지금 비가 오는 것 같다요.

Exercises

10 On your way to Chongro, you run across a friend of yours on
a Seoul street. Respond to his question, “What are you doing in
Chongro?” Tell him that you are going to do the following things
there:

a buy books
b meet friends
c spend time with friends

11 You have lost contact with Harry lately, and someone asks you
his whereabouts. Tell him that he seems to have done the follow-
ing:

a returned to America
b broken up with his girlfriend
c gone on a business trip
d fallen ill

12 Someone asks you whether there are students studying at such
a late hour in the library. Tell him that particular students from
America are studying there.

13 You did not have a chance to meet one of your colleagues late-
ly. When you unexpectedly meet him, you notice that he looks
younger than before. Compliment him.

14 Say that, now summer has begun, the days are getting longer.

15 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What are Korean autumns like?
B: It’s usually clear.
A: Does it often snow in autumn?
B: No, it starts to snow in December.
A: What do people do in autumn?
B: They go mountain climbing.

16 Complete the following dialogue:

A:
B: 한국의 가을 날씨는 보통 이래요.
A:
B: 단풍구경하러 설악산에 가겠어요.
A:
B: 아니요. 친구들과 같이 갈거예요.

17 Reading passage 〇〇 The following text discusses Korea’s
four seasons. It suggests things to do in each. Try to figure out the
advantages and disadvantages of each season.

한국의 기후는 대체로 사계절이 분명해요. 봄에는 산과 들에
꽃이 만발해서 아름다워요. 사람들은 봄에 산으로 소풍을 탔
Key words

d대체로 generally
분명하다 distinctive
만발하다 in full blossom
소풍가다 go on a picnic
수영장 swimming pool
d등산가다 go mountain climbing
d내리다 fall down
스키장 ski slope

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• talk about the place you are staying
• make a phone call
• use the indirect speech ending -고 하다
• use the relative clause marker -나(은/는) 것
• use the sentence ending -라고 하다
• use the 네, 그 irregular verbs

Dialogue 1  ☒ Samuel Kerry has taken a position as a CNN news reporter at the Korea branch in Seoul a couple of months ago and is staying at International House. Youngsk Lee, a Korean staffer, is curious to know about his new life at International House and asks him some somewhat personal questions.

영식: 언제부터 외국인 숙소에서 사셨어요?
영내: 2개월 전부터 거기에서 살고 있어요.
영식: 그 숙소는 회사에서 가까워요?
영내: 네, 아주 가까워서 걷어 다니고 있어요.
영식: 숙식비는 비싸요?
영내: 사람들은 비싸다고 해요.
영식: 두방을 쓰는데, 한달에 70만원이에요.
영내: 매우 비싸네요! 한국음식은 잘 드세요?
영식: 매운 것은 잘 못 먹어요. 불고기는 아주 좋아요.
영식: 그럼, 다음에 제가 불고기 한번 살게요.
영내: 좋습니다.

Vocabulary

수소 living quarters
살다 live
독방 single room
한 달 one month
Language points

**The noun suffix -전부터**

This suffix, when attached to the noun implying time, expresses “since,” “ago,” “before.”

언제부터 한국어 배우기 시작했어요? (Since) When did you begin to learn Korean?
여제부터 수영 배우기 시작했어요. I began to learn swimming (since) yesterday.

**The indirect speech ending -고 하다**

This ending is used to report in an indirect way what someone has said. Declarative indirect speech is made by attaching the ending -고 하다 to the end of the quoted sentence. It is equivalent to the expression, “They say that...”

내 친구는 내일 러시아에 간다고 해요. They say that one of my friends goes to Russia tomorrow.
내일은 날씨가 나쁘다고 해요. They say that the weather will be bad tomorrow.
Peter는 한국 여자와 결혼했다고 해요. They say that Peter married a Korean woman.

However, when the quoted sentence ends in linking verbs 이다/ 아니다, the indirect speech form -라고/아니라고 하다 is used to express the present tense.

그분은 장관이다. He’s a minister.
그분은 장관이라고 한다. They say that he’s a minister.
그것은 진짜 돈이 아니다. It’s not real money.
그것은 진짜 돈이 아니라고 한다. They say that it’s not real money.

---

**The compound verb -다니다**

This verb is combined with certain types of verb and indicates repetitive or ongoing action. Its literal meaning is “come around,” “go around.”

도서관에 걸어 다니요. I walk to the library.
회사까지 걸어 다니요. I walk to my company.
지하철역에서 검까지 걸어 다니요. I walk to my home from the subway station.

**Irregular verbs ending in 일**

When a vowel follows, the final consonant 일 of the stem in some verbs changes into 일. Note: the inserted vowel 일 is contracted into the next vowel -이, yielding the syllable -이.

가볍다 light → 가벼워요
덥다 warm → 더워요
어둡다 dark → 어두워요
가깝다 near → 가까워요

**The verbs 좋다 and 좋아하다**

좋다 is an adjectival verb. It does not need an object after it. Since it is adjectival, the verb 좋다 can take the relative clause marker -는 (은) to indicate the present tense. Its meaning is equivalent to English “good,” “OK.” The verb 좋아하다, on the other hand, is an action verb which does require an object. This verb can take the relative clause marker -는 for the present tense and -는 (은) for the past tense. Its meaning is equivalent to “like” or “love.”

내일은 날씨가 좋어요. Tomorrow’s weather is good.
뉴욕에는 좋은 식당이 있어요. There are good restaurants in New York City.
Jane은 값이 비싼 청바지를 입어요. Jane wears expensive jeans.
나는 머리가 긴 여자를 좋아해요. I like a girl who has long hair.
나를 좋아하는 남학생이 진심을 사 주었다. The male student who loves me bought me lunch.
Exercises

1 Someone compliments you on your excellent Korean. Tell him that you only started learning Korean two years ago.

2 A fellow swimmer at the pool compliments you on your technique. Tell her that you learned to swim ten years ago.

3 Someone asks you about Dong Woo’s whereabouts. Tell him that you heard that Dong Woo:
   a returned to America
   b was sick
   c disappeared

4 Someone at work asks how you get to the office every morning. Tell him that you get to work by walking, since your home is near the company’s offices.

5 Correct your friend’s grammar:
   a 그는 사과를 좋다.
   b 그 사람을 사과를 좋아한다.
   c John은 한국이 좋아해서 한국 여자와 결혼했다.
   d 그 여학생은 내가 좋은 학생이에요.

6 Someone asks you where you live. Tell him that you live:
   a in an apartment near the company
   b at International House
   c at a relative’s house

7 Someone wants to give you a big treat, and he asks you what kind of Korean food you like best. Tell him that you like Pulgogi best.

8 You have moved to a new place, and a friend asks you about it. Translate this dialogue into Korean:
   A: Where do you live right now?
   B: I live at the Hoam Faculty House.
   A: Is it near the place where you work?
   B: No, it’s quite far away. So, I go to work by bus every morning.

9 Complete the following dialogue:
   A: 지금 어디에서 사세요?
   B:

A: 숙식비는 비싸요?
B: 
A: 한국 음식은 어때요?
B: 
A: 무슨 음식을 가장 좋아 하세요?
B: 
A: 그럼, 오늘 저녁에 내가 갈비 한 번 살게요.

Culture point

When a foreign traveler enters Seoul, he may wonder what major media services are available. There are two English language-based daily newspapers – the Korea Times and the Korea Herald, which are available at most newsstands and stores. You can usually get a copy of the New York Times, Los Angeles Times, Chicago Tribune, and London Times at the counter of major first-rate hotels. Korea has four TV networks, all broadcasting in Korean. These are KBS, MBC, SBS, and EBS. There is also the American Forces Korea Network (AFKN), which broadcasts exclusively in English on behalf of the U.S. military stationed throughout the country. AFKN’s programs are not limited to military events: AFKN also broadcasts a diverse range of world news and sports 24 hours a day. Reception for AFKN is not always good outside Seoul.

You can find a public telephone on almost every street corner in Seoul. For a local call, deposit two Korean coins (₩10) for three minutes. But to make a long-distance call to Korean cities, you can use larger coins like the ₩50, ₩100, and ₩500. For an international call, check the country and area codes on the information sheet attached to the telephone booth and dial the numbers as directed. For example, when one wants to make a call to the U.S.A. one has to dial a series of numbers: 001 (or 002) – 1 – area code – phone number. To make an international call, it is convenient to use a telephone card, which one can purchase at designated places. Telephone cards are sold for ₩3,000, ₩5,000, and ₩10,000.

Dialogue 2 remen Samuel Kerry returns from work to International House and asks the clerk whether he has received any phone messages for him

 рем: 아저씨, 지한테 오늘 전화 온 걸 있었어요?
 아저씨: 예, 부산에 있는 친구한테서 전화 왔었어요.
 рем: 뭐라고 했어요?
가지시: 저녁에 다시 (전화) 전다면 했어요.
그렇게, 빨로 결하지 않다고 했어요.

성: 그래요, 제가 먼저 전화를 해 왔어요.
여보세요. 저기 부산이지요?

대화자: 예, 누군가 했으세요?
성: 저 민선이 친구인데, 있으면 바꿔 주세요.

대화자: 민선씨요? 여기에 그런 분 안 게시되는세요.
성: 저는 333국의 7592번 아닙니까.

대화자: 예, 아니예요. 저는 332국의 7592번이에요.
성: 그래요? 전화 잘못 걸어서 미안합니다.

Vocabulary

전화: phone call
전화는: phone call that came
부산: Pusan
한테서: from
저녁/밤: evening
전화결다: make a phone call
급하다: urgent
누군가(누구를): whom
바꿔주다: let me speak to
국: station number
번: number
잘못 걸다: dial the wrong number
미안하다: sorry

Language points

The relative clause marker -\(\text{~은/는} \text{~ 것}\)

This pattern is equivalent to the relative clauses “the one which . . . ,” “that which . . . ,” or “what . . . ” as in the sentence “This is the one which I lost in a train.” The modifying phrase, placed before the word 것 “thing,” takes -\(\text{~은/는}\) for an adjectival verb (present tense) and for action verbs (past tense). It also takes -\(\text{~는}\) for action verbs (present tense).

제일 값이 싸웠을 사서요. Please buy the cheapest one.
제일 포양이 좋은 것을 사서요. Please buy the one which looks the best.
우리가 먹은 것은 너무 맛있어요. What we had is too hot.
우리는 회장님에게 말씀하시는 것을 노트에다 써요. We write in a notebook what the chairman says.

The postposition -\(\text{한테서}\)

This is used to denote a person as the source or origin of an action. But for an inanimate source or origin the postposition -\(\text{에서}\) is used.

오늘 아침에 친구한테서 전화가 왔어요.
어머님한테서 편지가 왔어요.
편지가 집에서 왔어요.
전화가 고향에서 왔어요.

This morning a phone call came from my friend.
A letter came from my mother.
A letter has come from my home.
A phone call came from my hometown.

The sentence ending -\(\text{라고} \text{~하다}\)

This ending is attached to nouns of various types and indicates “This is (called) . . . ” (lit. “This is being called as . . . ”).

이게 뭐예요? What’s this?
이것은 침판이라고 해요. We call this a blackboard.
저는 박상석이라고 해요. I am Sang Seok Park.
이 단어는 한국어로 뭐라고 해요? What do you call this word in Korean?

The \(\text{~irregular verb}\)

Lesson 7 introduced some \(\text{~irregular verbs}\) which drop the consonant before the consonant \(\text{~}\). The verb \(\text{~다}\) also obeys this deletion rule when either \(\text{~\text{~}}\) or \(\text{~\text{~}}\) follows it.

전화 걸었어요. I made a phone call.
전화를 건 사람은 누구지요? Who’s the person that made a phone call?
전화를 건다고 했어요. (He) said that he will make a phone call.

Answering negative questions in Korean

Special attention should be paid to the ways in which Koreans respond to a negative question. When they respond with “\(\text{~예,}\) it
means that what the speaker has asked is correct. However, when
they respond “아니오” it means that what he/she has asked is incor-
rect i.e., conflicts with the answer.

오늘 저녁에 도서관에 가요? Are you going to the library
tonight?  
예, 가요. Yes, I am.  
아니오, 가지 않아요. No, I am not.  
한국어 사전을 사지 못했어요? Couldn’t you buy a Korean
dictionary?  
예, 사지 못했어요. No, I couldn’t.  
지금 도서관에 안 가요? Aren’t you going to the
library now?  
아니오, 가요. Yes, I am.

The contracted form 누굴

When the question word 누구 takes the object marker -을/를, only
the consonant ㄹ is carried underneath the second syllable よ. This
process yields the contraction 를.

역에서 누구를 만났어요? Who did you meet at the station?
역에서 누굴 만났어요? Who did you meet at the station?

Korean telephone numbers

A typical Korean number consists of the station and individual
telephone number (e.g., 496-3879). One can read these whole
numbers as they are or the single digit numbers by using the Sino-
Korean method. Note that the suffix -에 is inserted after the station
number. It is equivalent to a dash (−) in English.

집 전화 번호가 몇 번이에요? What’s your home phone
number?  
사택구십육국에 삼천팔백칠십구번 입니다. It’s 496-3879.
사택구십육국번입니다. It’s 496-3879.

When you make a phone call from smaller local cities to Seoul,
you have to dial “02” first, and then the rest of the numbers.
You can find city codes for all other Korean cities in the telephone
directory.

Exercises

10 Someone sees you reading a letter and asks you who it came
from. Tell him that it came from your younger brother.

11 Someone sees you reading a letter and asks you where it came
from. Tell him that the letter came from your home.

12 You do not know the Korean names of the objects you have
in front of you. Ask what these words are in Korean:

a belt  
b purse  
c pocket-size notebook

13 Someone asks you whether you did the following, and you are
sure that you didn’t, or wouldn’t. How would you respond?

a 어제 교회에 갔어요?  
b 지난 일요일에 Casino에 안 갔어요?  
c 내일 한국 영화 보지 않겠어요?  
d 육개장 안 먹어 봤어요?

14 You return to the guest house where you are staying and the
clerk tells you there was a phone call for you. Ask him the name
of the person who called you.

15 A Korean businessman treats you to an excellent meal. He
asks you how you liked the food. Tell him that what you had was
delicious.

16 You are holding a staff meeting, and you think that it’s a good
idea for staff members to write down what you say. How do you
tell them to do so?

17 You dial the telephone number for your friend’s house, and
you are told that you have dialed the wrong number. How do you
apologize to the person answering the phone?

18 You answer the phone, and the person at the other end of the
line wants to speak with someone you do not know. How can you
tell the person that he has the wrong number?

19 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: Is there a phone message for me?  
B: Yes, a guy from KBS called you.  
A: Do you have his phone number?
B: Here it is.
A: I must call him right away.
B: It's already seven o'clock. He must have left work for the day.
A: You're right. I'll call him tomorrow morning.

20 Complete the following dialogue:

A: 여보세요? 거기에 김문수씨 계세요?
B: 
A: 거기가 653에 3546번 아닐니까?
B: 
A: 아, 알겠습니다. 미안합니다.

21 Reading passage  ⚫⚫ Samuel Kerry took a job as a CNN news reporter in Seoul and arrived at Kimpot Airport on a humid summer day. He took a taxi and checked into International House. However, it took him more than two hours because he had a couple of problems. Try to figure out what problems he ran into and how he overcame them.

Samuel Kerry는 CNN방송국 기자로 서울지국에 부임하게 되었다. 어느 주말 날 그는 김포공항에 도착한 후에, 택시를 타고 외국인 속소까지 갔다. 가는데 교통이 너무 밀려서, 택시가 빨리 달릴 수가 없었다. 또한, 택시 운전사는 Kerry씨의 영어 발음을 잘못 알아 들고, Intercontinental Hotel에 내려 주었다. 거기에 있는 경비원은 씨의 도움을 받아, 다시 택시를 타고 외국인 속소로 갈 수 있었다. 그러나, 공항에서 속소까지 3시간이 넘게 걸렸다.

**Key words**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>발송국</th>
<th>broadcast station</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>기자</td>
<td>reporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지국</td>
<td>branch bureau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부임하다</td>
<td>take a new position (job)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통</td>
<td>traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>발음</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경비원</td>
<td>guard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**By the end of this lesson you should be able to:**
- accept an invitation to a Korean home
- express likes and dislikes
- use the nominalizing marker -기
- use the sentence endings -(으)면 좋겠다. (아/어/여)도 되다. -(는) 면이다.
- use the conjunctions -만, -(을) 때에
- use the -irregular verbs
- use the sentence ending -(으) 보이다

**Dialogue 1  ⚫⚫ Mr. Kim, section chief of a trading company, invites several of his staff members, including Ms. Jones, to a party. She works as copy editor for the English section of the company’s magazine. Since she is not familiar with Seoul streets, he gives Ms. Jones a hand-sketched map of the area near his house**

김: 존스 선생님, 이번 주말에 저희 집에서 파티하는데 오실 수 있어요?
존스: 아, 그러면? 그런데, 그 날이 무슨 날이예요?
김: 아뇨, 아무 날도 아닙니다.
그저 회사 직원들을 초대해서 저녁을 내셔할 뿐입니다.
존스: 몇시에 갈까요?
김: 저녁 6시에 오세요.
존스: 김과장님댁 주소는 어떻게 되지요?
김: 네, 한남동 185번지입니다.
존스: 한국집은 찾아가 힘들어요. 약도 있으면 좋겠어요.
김: 맞아요. 약도하고 추소 여기 있습니다.
(약도를 보면서) 우체국에서 저의 집이 보입니다.
존스: 찾아갈 수 있을 것 같아요.
Vocabulary

주말 weekend
파티하다 throw a party
무슨 날 what kind of date
무슨 날도 no particular date
직원 staff
초대하다 invite
과장님 section chief
택 house (honorary) address
주소 address
한남동 Hannam-Dong
번지 street number
약도 sketched map
우체국 post office
treat

Language points

The sentence ending -(으)면 좋겠다

This ending is used to express a speaker’s wish for something to happen or be done to his or her advantage. Its meaning is equivalent to the expression “I wish/hope…”

비가 안 오면 좋겠다.
사람들이 파티에 많이 오면 좋겠다.
돈이 많이 있으면 좋겠다.

비가 안 오면 좋겠다.
I hope it won’t rain.
사람들이 파티에 많이 오면 좋겠다.
I hope a lot of people come to the party.
돈이 많이 있으면 좋겠다.
I wish I had a lot of money.

The nominalizing marker -기

Lesson 15 introduced two uses for the nominalizing suffix -기. In the third kind, when it is attached to the verb stem, this marker converts action verbs into the verbal noun forms “-ing,” “to do something.” This changed form can take a subject or object case marker in a sentence.

공부하다 study → 공부하기 studying
달리다 run → 달리기 running
읽다 read → 읽기 reading

시험 공부하기가 쉽지 않아요. It’s not easy studying for the test.
그는 여제부터 시험 공부를 시작했어요. He began studying for the test (since) yesterday.
내 동생은 책 읽기를 좋아해요. My younger brother likes reading books.

The verbs 보다/보다이다

보다 is an active verb which is usually used when a speaker intends a voluntary action (“look at”, or “watch”). In this usage, the object case marker (-을/를) can be taken. But 보이다 is the passive form of a verb used for his or her involuntary state of being “visible.” In this case, the subject case marker (-이/가) can be recovered.

어제 회사에서 Jane 봤어요? Did you see Jane at the company yesterday?
저 큰 건물(을) 보셨어요. Look at the big building over there.
저 큰 건물(이) 보십니까? Can you see the big building over there?

Exercises

1 A friend of yours asks you what you hope for in the New Year. Tell him that you want three things:

a to become richer
b to be promoted
c to take a round-the-world trip

2 Imagine that you have recently been relocated to a Seoul office. Your supervisor wants to know what kinds of problems you are facing in your new life in Seoul. Tell her that it is difficult to do the following things:

a take a taxi
b have a good night’s sleep
c find American food

3 Mr. Lee, section chief in your office, asks you whether you can come to a party this coming Saturday. How do you accept his offer?

4 When you are invited to a party by Mr. Lee, you don’t know the area where he lives. Tell him that you need a sketched map.

5 You have an appointment with a Korean businessman, and you’ve had detailed directions from him over the phone. Tell him that you are confident you’ll find his place.
6 Correct your friend’s grammar:
 a 지기에 빨간 건물이 바요.
 b 지기 있는 큰 건물을 보여요.
 c 큰 건물이 보는 쪽에서 우리 집은 왼쪽에 있습니다.

7 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
A: What are you going to do over the weekend?
B: I’m free.
A: Can you come over to my house?
B: Is it a special day?
A: No, I just want to spend (some) time with you.

8 Complete the following dialogue:
A: 오늘 저녁에 뭐 하세요?
B:
A: 선약이 없으면, 우리 집에 가서 밥을 한 갑 해요.
B:
A: 그럼, 내일 저녁은 어때요?
B:
A: 내일 일이 끝난 후에 지하 다방에서 만나요.
B:

Culture point
When a foreigner works at a Korean or American company in Korea for any period of time, the chances are that he or she is likely to be invited to a Korean home at some time or another. When such a visit occurs, it is quite acceptable/normal to bring the host(ess) some type of gift. But a foreigner may be surprised that the host(ess) does not unwrap the gift or make any comment on it in front of him or her. One reason for this behavior is that many Koreans do not like looking frivolous by revealing what the gift is to others who may be around at the time when it is given. Their attitude is that only a child gets a gift from a giver, opens it, and then uses it at once. The Confucian tradition trains Koreans to aspire to look very reserved, respectful, calm, even if there is something that is distracting them. Another possible reason is the concept of face-saving. At the moment when the gift is being opened, the recipient may unconsciously indicate that the gift is somehow not suitable. In this case, the host or hostess’s attitude might make the visitor feel uncomfortable – and thus “face” would be lost. A foreigner should, therefore, not feel embarrassed when a Korean host accepts a gift and puts it away somewhere on a shelf.

Dialogue 2  Ms. Jones arrives at Kim’s house and hands him a small gift. At the party Ms. Jones compliments him on the variety of tasty-looking food on offer

김: 존스 선생님, 어서 오세요.
존스: 예. 김과장님, 여기 조그만 선물 가지 왔습니다.
김: 아이구, 그냥 오셔도 되는데요.
존스: 볼게 안날닙니다.
김: 차림 것은 변변치 않습니다만, 많이 드세요.
존스: 차림 음식들이 너무 맛있어 보입니다.
김: 청찬해 주셔서 감사합니다. 존스 선생님, 매우 반찬 잘 드세요?
존스: 잘 먹는 편이에요.
김: 김치가 맵지만, 맥을 때에 찬물을 많이 마시면 되거든요.
김: 아, 존스 선생님은 머리가 비상하네요!
존스: 아니예요. 제 친구가 가르쳐 주었어요.

Vocabulary
조그만  tiny  매운 반찬  hot side-dishes
선물  gift  가져오다  bring
아이구  oh!  변변치 않다  not good
그냥  just  편  side
별거  not that  김치  Kimchi
차림 것  things that one  맵다  hot and spicy
displayed  물  water
맛  taste  비상한  extremely smart
청찬하다  praise  가르쳐 주다  teach

Language points
The s irregular verbs

Some adjectival verbs conjugate irregularly, in that the final consonant s of the stem is subject to deletion before such consonants as 림, 림, 림 and the vowel ㅇ.

빨갛다  red  →  빨간
하얗다  white  →  하얀
노랗다  yellow  →  노란
조그랗다  tiny  →  조그만
이렇다  be like this  →  이런
The permissive sentence ending  
-아(어/여)도 되다

This ending is used to express the concession “may.” Other words, such as 좋다 or 잘하다 can follow -도. They mean either “it’s all right” or “it doesn’t matter.”

외의에 늦게 와도 됩니다. It’s all right even if you are late for the meeting.
내일 다시 와도 됩니다. It’s all right even if you come again tomorrow.
그 일을 내일 해도 됩니다. You may do that work tomorrow.

Another contrastive conjunction -만

Lessons 8 and 10 introduced two kinds of contrastive conjunctions -지만 and --(으)나. This conjunction is attached to a clause ending in -나다 and means “although” or “but.” The second conjunction tends to be more formal than the first one.

그 분이 회의에 오셨습니다만, 만나지 못했습니다. Although he came to the meeting, I couldn’t meet him.
교통사고가 났습니다만, 운전사는 다치지 않았습니다. Although the traffic accident took place, the driver did not get hurt.

The sentence ending -어 보이다

This ending is attached to the stem of adjectival verbs and means “seem” + adjective.

그 사람은 키가 커 보입니다. He seems tall.
그 음식은 아주 매워 보입니다. The food seems very hot and spicy.

The temporal conjunction -에/을 때에

This conjunction is used with any verbs and indicates adverbial expressions of time. Its meaning is equivalent to “at the time when…”

학교에 올 때에 책을 가져 오세요.
날씨가 좋을 때 공원에 갑니다.
물건 값이 비싸 때는 사지 마다.

Note: This conjunction can also take such particles as -가/이, -을/을, -도, -부터.

공부할 때가 되었어요.
봄에 눈이 올 때도 있었습니다.

It’s time to study.
At times, it snowed in the spring.

The sentence ending - (는) 편이다

This sentence ending is used with any verb and indicates one’s habitual action in doing something when we want to distinguish between what one can do and what one cannot do. Thus, it is equivalent to “…can do something well.”

Peter씨는 매운 음식을 잘 먹는 편이다.
Peter can eat hot and spicy food well.

나는 한국에 오랫동안 살았는데도, 한국음식을 잘 못 먹는 편이에요.
Although I lived in Korea for a long time, I can’t eat Korean food well.

Exercises

9 At the doorstep of Mr. Kim’s house, you hand him a gift. As a matter of courtesy, you want to tell him that it is only small. What would you say?

10 You have invited Mr. Kim to your house for a year-end party. He calls you to tell you that he is going to be late because of a traffic jam. Tell him that it’s all right to come a bit late.

11 You are led to a table full of good food. You want to compliment the hostess on her excellent cooking skills by saying that all of the food looks tasty. What would you say?

12 You have borrowed a Korean dictionary from a friend, and he tells you that he needs it back. Tell him that you are going to return it to him when you see him tomorrow.
13 At a party, one of the guests asks you whether you like eating Korean food. Tell him that you do.

14 Rearrange the words of the following dialogue to make sense:
A: 참석하지, 사장님은, 회의에, 출근했지만, 양았다
B: 맛, 음식이, 보이던, 차린, 있어
A: 면지만, 김치가, 잘, 먹는, 저는, 편이에요.
B: 물을, 마셔요, 많이, 김치를, 배운, 먹을 때는

15 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
A: Which Korean food do you like best?
B: I like something that is not too hot.
A: Do you like Chapchae?
B: Of course I do.
A: How about Kimchi?
B: I don't like Kimchi too much, because it is so hot.

16 Complete the following dialogue:
A: 어떤 곳에 갑어요?
B: 
A: 무엇 날이었어요?
B: 
A: 협회장님댁에서 한국음식 많이 먹었어요?
B: 
A: 무엇 음식이 가장 맛이 있었어요?
B: 
A: 저는 채식을 하기 때문에, 불고기는 잘 안 먹어요.

17 Reading passage One Saturday evening James Goldsmith is invited to Mr. Lee's house for a social gathering of the staff in his office. On his way to Mr. Kim's house, he drops into a flower shop and buys a dozen roses as a gift for Mr. Kim's wife. When he arrives at Mr. Kim's house on time, he is taken by surprise to find that no one else is there. Try to figure out how James has gone wrong and how he overcomes his problem.

어느 토요일 저녁에 James Goldsmith 씨는 김과장님댁에 초대 받았습니다. 김과장님댁에 가는 길에 꽃가게에 들려서 사모님께 주려고 장미 한 다발을 샀습니다. 선물을 가지고 6시에 김과장님댁에 도착했을 때 손님들이 없었습니다. 이상해서 김과장님댁에 들어 왔을 때, 손님들이 7시에 온다고 했습니다. 그때부터 들이는 손님들이 온 때까지 비디오 영화를 봤습니다. 7시에 회사 직원 손님들이 전부 와서, 그때부터 채미 있는 파티가 시작되었습니다.
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• talk about moving into a Korean apartment
• use the sentence endings -면서요?
  -곤 하나다. 그(을) 계획이다
• use the sentence endings -고(을) 필요가 있다. 뉴(은)지가...되다
• use the conjunctions -자마자. 그(을) 결
• use the sentence ending -고(을) 시간이 있다

Dialogue 1  ☛ John Armstrong has recently moved into a new apartment. Mr. Chang, a colleague, asks him about it

장: 새 아파트로 이사했다면서요?
암스트롱: 예, 한 달 전에 이사했어요.
장: 평수가 어떻게 됐나?
암스트롱: 30평인데 새 아파트입니다.
장: 암스트롱씨, 돈을 많이 벌 모양이군요.
암스트롱: 아니요. 회사에서 무료로 임대 해 준 거예요.
장: 동네 사람들은 얼마나 됐어요?
암스트롱: 예. 이사하자마자 열집 사람들을 초대해서 한 티 넣었어요.
장: 동네는 조용합니까?
암스트롱: 아뇨. 때때로 밤 늦게까지 소란스러운 때도 있어요.
장: 저희 동네도 마찬가지예요. 여름에는 밤 12시까지 차 소리가 나곤 해요.

Vocabulary
아파트  apartment
이사하다  move
평수  Pyong (= 3.954 square yards)
동네  neighborhood
옆집  next door
한 티 내다  give a treat

Language points
The sentence ending -면서요?
This interrogative ending, when attached to the declarative ending (-다) of a sentence, is used to ask a listener to confirm knowledge about a certain fact or event which a speaker has acquired from someone or a public source (e.g., the media).

그 사람 영국에 갔다면서요?
I heard that he went to England. Is it true?

어제 동대문 시장에서 불이 났다면서요?
I heard that a fire broke out at the Dongdaemoon market yesterday. Is it true?

However, when the sentence ends with a linking verb (or verbs) (-이다/아니다), the last syllable of the verb changes to -다, to which the different ending -면서요? is attached.

저분이 회사 사장님이라면서요?
They say that he is a president of the company, am I right?
저 건물은 67층이라면서요?
They say that building has 67 stories, am I right?

The sentence ending -니/은(은) 모양이다
This ending is attached to the stem of the action verb and indicates the likelihood that some event has happened. Its meaning is equivalent to “it seems to be . . .,” “it looks like . . .,” or “it seems as if . . .” It may take other suffixes (니/은,는데,로/을) to express,
respectively, the present tense for an adjectival verb, the present tense for an action verb, and the future tense for an action verb:

내 친구는 어제 회의에 늦게 온 모양입니다.
It seems that my friend was late for the meeting yesterday.

차가 고속도로에서 고장난 모양입니다.
It seems that the car was broken down on the highway.

요즈음 차 값이 싼 모양이에요.
These days, it seems that cars are inexpensive.

학생들이 아직도 북도에서 기다리는 모양입니다.
It seems that students are still waiting in the hall.

이번에 김 과장은 비싼 차를 사 모양입니다.
It seems that Section Chief Kim will buy an expensive car.

**The conjunction - 자마자**

This conjunction is used to express one action that is immediately followed by another. It is equivalent to various English expressions ("as soon as...", "no sooner...than...", "immediately after...", etc.).

학교에 가자마자 도서관에 갔어요.
As soon as I went to school, I went to the library.

도서관이 열자마자 학생들이 들어져 들어갔다.
As soon as the library was open, students rushed in in groups.

**The sentence ending - 곤 하다**

This ending is attached to the stem of an action verb and expresses a speaker's repetitive action in the present tense. It is equivalent to the English words "often," "occasionally," "frequently." Note that the tense is reflected in the verb 하다.

John은 일요일도 회사에 나가곤 해요.
John often goes to work, even on Sundays.

4월에도 눈이 많이 오곤 해요.
It often snows a lot, even in April.

Armstrong씨는 미국에 있을 때, 무역회사에서 일하곤 했어요.
When he was in America, Mr. Armstrong used to work for the trading company.

**The compound verb 한 탁 내다**

This verb means "give one a big treat." You may hear this type of expression very often once you start working with Korean colleagues.

새로 이사했으니가,
Because I moved (home), I'll have to give you a big treat.
한 탁 내야지 요.
When I'm promoted next month, I'll given you a big treat.
다음 달에 승진하면

**The expression 마찬가지다**

This expression is used to reflect what a speaker has already said and is equivalent to "much the same."

오늘 비가 많이 왔어요.
Today it rained a lot.
내일도 마찬가지예요.
It's (going to be) much the same tomorrow.

요즈음 수박 값이 비싸요.
These days, watermelon is expensive.
참외 값도 마찬가지예요.
Melon is much the same.

**Exercises**

1 You have heard that Mr. Armstrong recently moved to a new apartment, and you want to make sure this is true. What would you ask him?

2 While you are riding in a taxi, you notice a high tower-block to your left. You remember having heard that it's a 46-story building. Ask the driver whether that's true.

3 A friend of yours has bought a new apartment as well as a new car. He seems to have made a fortune. How might you comment on it?
4 A colleague is looking for Mr. Chang, and you saw him go out a minute ago. Tell your colleague that Mr. Chang went out as soon as the meeting was over.

5 You are being interviewed for a receptionist job, and the interviewer asks about your work experience. Tell him that you used to be a secretary at City Hall.

6 Someone asks what you spend time doing at weekends. Tell him that you frequently go climbing with a group of friends.

7 You have moved to a new apartment and you think that it would be a good idea to invite your office colleagues to a celebratory party. Tell them that you would like to give them a big treat.

8 A friend tells you that the outside of the apartment where she lives is very noisy up until 10 p.m. Your place is much the same. What would you say?

9 Correct your friend's grammar:
   a Jane은 다음 날에 일본에 간 모양이에요.
   b 내 동생은 집에 오자마자 화장실에 들어갔다.
   c 여름에 날씨가 더우면, 사람들은 옷이 벗곤 한다.

10 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
   A: I heard that you've moved to an expensive apartment. Is this true?
   B: Yeah. It's three months since I moved in.
   A: How big is it?
   B: It's about 25 Pyong. It's OK for the three of us in our family.
   A: Have you met any people in the apartment complex?
   B: Not yet. But I'm going to invite a group of people for a getting-to-know-you party.
   A: When you do, please invite me as well!
   B: Of course!

11 Complete the dialogue:
   A: 언제 새 아파트로 이사 가셨어요?
   B:
   A: 아파트 주민들은 만났어요?
   B:
   A: 그럼, 한번 사람들과 초대해서 한 탁 내야지요.
   B:
   A: 빨리 하면 좋어요.
   B:

Culture point
Most Korean citizens live in apartments in an apartment complex. Mammoth apartment complexes cluster around Seoul. Even a tiny-looking apartment cell (equivalent to approx. 100 sq. feet) costs $100,000 (equivalent to 25 Pyong), so many Koreans buy a smaller apartment unit and then move to a bigger unit as the household income increases. Koreans have not adopted a rental system for apartments, as Americans and British people have. They usually buy an apartment, small or big, depending on its affordability. In this case, middle-class Koreans can borrow 20 percent of the full cost from their bank. They usually pay the remaining amount as a cash down-payment. In many instances, buyers may end up borrowing a large amount from family members or close friends, unless they are rich enough to pay for their apartments entirely in cash. There are still many traditional Korean houses, which older people seem to prefer to live in. The price of these houses is a bit lower than those of modern apartments in an apartment complex, where a whole range of facilities, ranging from cleaners to drugstores, are within walking distance.

Dialogue 2 ○ ○ A colleague asks Mr. Armstrong about the new apartment he's recently moved into. Mr. Armstrong says that it is messy and the furniture needs to be arranged properly.

A: 세로 이사한 아파트의 집 정리하는 것이 되었어요?
B: 아니요. 집이 다 정리되지 않아서 양방입니다.
A: 가구도 새로 사셨어요?
B: 아직 살 시간이 없었어요.
A: 내일 집사람과 같이 나가서 살 계획입니다.
B: 방은 몇 개나 해요?
A: 몇 몇 방이 들어 있고, 용접설이 하나 있어요.
B: 소파와 창장은 살 필요가 없어요?
A: 그것들은 산 지가 얼마되지 않아서 아직도 깔끔해요.
B: 시간이 정리되면, 구경할 겸해서 놀리 오세요.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>정리되다</td>
<td>in order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찬장</td>
<td>cupboard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The sentence ending - 있다(을) 시간이 있다

This ending is attached to the stem of any action verb and indicates that a speaker has time to do something. 있다 replaces 있다 to express "no time to do something."

오호에 회의할 시간이 있어요.
I have time to attend the meeting in the afternoon.

바빠서 책 읽을 시간이 없어요.
Because I'm busy, I don't have time to read books.

일요일에도 등산할 시간이 없어요.
I don't have time to climb, not even on Sundays.

The sentence ending - 있다(을) 계획이다

This ending is attached to the stem of any action verb and indicates that a speaker has a plan to do something.

주말에 부산에 갈 계획입니다.
I'm planning to go to Pusan over the weekend.

다음 달에 새 아파트로 이사할 계획입니다.
I'm planning to move to a new apartment next month.

The sentence ending - 있다(을) 필요가 있다

This ending is attached to the stem of any action verb and indicates one's need to do something. The English equivalent is "one needs to do..." The case marker 가 is optional. The opposite meaning can be obtained by substituting 있다 with 없다.

시험 때는 공부를 많이 할 필요가 있어요.
I need to study a lot when I have a test.

피곤할 때는 잠을 많이 잡 필요가 있어요.
I need to sleep a lot when I am tired.

The conjunction - 있다(을) 결

This is used to express the idea of one action accompanying another at the same time ("to engage in two activities at the same time.")

물도 마실 결, 차에서 내립니다.
Let's get out of the car and drink water.

서내 구경도 할 결, 종로에 나감니다.
Let's go out to Chongro and tour around downtown.

The noun 결 may also be used to put two nouns in a row.

이 건물은 사무실 결 주택이에요.
This building is used as both an office and living quarters.

The verb 결하다 means to hold more than one job at the same time.

그 분은 과장을 결하고 있습니다.
He is acting section chief (i.e., in addition to his original job).
Exercises

12 Mr. Lee, section chief of the office, wants to arrange a picnic for this coming Saturday. He asks you whether you have anything to do this weekend. Tell him politely that you have no time to go on a picnic.

13 A friend of yours wants to go shopping at Midopa (one of the old and best department stores in Seoul) with you, and you have a previous engagement. Tell her that you don’t have time to go shopping.

14 Everyone in the office knows that the car you drive frequently breaks down, and a colleague wonders if you need a new car. Tell her that you plan to buy a new one.

15 You have moved to a new house, and someone asks you whether you need new furniture. Tell him that you have furniture that still looks brand new.

16 Mr. Lee wonders if he should attend a staff meeting for a certain project, and you think that he doesn’t have to. Tell him that he does not have to attend the meeting this time.

17 You recently moved to a new condominium. You haven’t let everyone in the office know this. Miss Lee, who has heard about it, asks you when you moved. Tell her that it’s a year since you moved to your new apartment.

18 You want to persuade a friend to go to Myongdong (one of the busiest shopping streets in the eastern part of Seoul). He is not convinced. Tell him that you can catch a movie and at the same time do some shopping at the department store.

19 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
A: How long is it since you moved (to a new house) in Kangnam?
B: It’s about three months.
A: Everything in your house is all in order?
B: No, it’s still messy.
A: Show me your house when it’s ready.
B: Sure, I’d be glad to.

20 Complete the dialogue:
A: 집 정돈 다 됐어?
B:
At the gas station

19 주유소에서

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:

• buy gas at a gas station
• have a car repaired at a service station
• use the sentence endings -ㄹ(을) 빼다, -어/여, -나가
• use the conjunctions -(이) 라서, 동안에

Dialogue 1 Sandra Hopkins is driving Su Jin Kwon along the bank of a river to find a suitable picnic spot. Sandra happens to notice that the gas is running dangerously low. They look for a gas station nearby and fill the car full of unleaded gasoline.

Sandra: 가스가 거의 다 빼어지고 있는 것 같아요.
Su Jin: 그래요. 이 근처는 농장이라서 주유소가 없는데요.
Sandra: 그럼, 어디로 가야지요?
Su Jin: 저기 길 모퉁이 보이죠?
Sandra: 저기 나가서 좀 가면, 새로 생긴 주유소가 있을지 몰라요.
Su Jin: 한번 그래가 봐요.
Sandra: 아, 저기 새마을 주유소가 보이네요!
Su Jin: 나도 왔어요. 큰 일 날 뻔 했어요.
(Su Jin로부터)
Sandra: 여기 오세요. 무엇을 도와 드릴까요?
Su Jin: 무엇을 도와드릴까요?
Sandra: 무엇을 도와드릴까요?
Su Jin: 어, 여기 주유소는 안 하십니까?
Sandra: 안해도 돼요, 아직도 깨끗하기도요.

Vocabulary

가스 gas
거의 almost
새마을 주유소 New Village Station

Language points

The causal conjunction -(이) 라서

A few conjunctions used to combine a cause clause with an effect clause have been introduced already. These are -(어/여)서 in Lesson 3, -(으)니가 in Lesson 12, and -(기) 땅에 in Lesson 13. However, this conjunction is directly attached only to nouns.

방학이어서 도서관에 학생들이 없어요.
Because it's a vacation, there are no students in the library.

조그만 곳이어서 수입이 많지 않아요.
Because it is tiny, the gross income of the store isn't that big.

The sentence ending -ㄹ(을) 빼다

This ending is used to indicate that a certain action has nearly taken place, but did not actually happen for some reason. The tense is shown on the end of the verb phrase. Its English equivalent is "to come close to doing/happening."

너무 늦게 일어나서 회의에 늦을 뻔 했어요.
Because I woke up late, I was almost late for the meeting.

가스가 다 빼어져서 큰일 날 뻔 했어요.
Because (my car) ran out of gas, I almost had a serious problem.

The compound verb form -(어/여)주다

The verb 주다 can be combined with certain action verbs and implies that a speaker renders some service to the hearer. This
compound verb is used when the speaker requests some service to be rendered or when he or she personally provides the service to the hearer who is lower in social rank and younger in age.

읽다 read → 읽어 주다 read for someone
가스를 넣다 put in gas → 가스를 넣어 주다 put in gas for someone
그 아이한테 책을 읽어 주세요. Read the book for that child.

**The semi-causal sentence ending -거든요**

This ending, when attached to any verb, provides a slight cause for the sentence immediately preceding the one containing the verb.

주말에 여행 못 갔어요. 비가 많이 왔거든요.
I didn’t take a trip. It’s because it rained a lot.

저녁에 도서관에 안 갔어요. 피곤하기거든요.
I’m not going to the library. It’s because I’m tired.

**Exercises**

1 A friend asks why he didn’t see you last week. Tell him that, since you were on vacation last week, you didn’t come to work.

2 You and a friend of yours are out on the beach to beat the summer heatwave. Your friend is very surprised to see tens of thousands of people swarming along the seafront. Tell him that, because of the hot summer, a lot of people have come to the beach.

3 You overslept one morning. Later, one of your colleagues asks you how your morning was. Tell her that you were almost late for a meeting.

4 At a gas station an attendant asks you how much gas is left in the tank. Tell him there’s almost none and you almost ran into a serious problem.

5 At a gas station, an attendant asks you how much gas you want to buy. Ask him for four liters.

6 A group of people in the office went on a picnic last Sunday, and you missed it. Monday morning, someone asks you why you didn’t come. Tell him that you were sick.

7 A friend of yours compliments you on the pretty dress you are wearing. Tell him that it’s a brand-new dress.

8 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: Do you need gas?
B: Yes, I do. Please put in 2 liters.
A: No problem. Do you want your windshield wiped?
B: No, I don’t think so, because I cleaned it this morning.
A: Oh, I see.

9 Complete the dialogue:

A: 기름이 다 떨어진 것 같네요.
B: 
A: 모르겠어요.
B: 
A: 저기 경찰 아주씨는 알거에요.
B: 
A and B:

**Culture point**

It is generally no problem for a first-time visitor to Korea to cope with the public transport systems. But you can choose to rent a car. However, many foreigners are reluctant to drive even a rental car because the traffic laws are different and visitors are not familiar with the roads. To rent a car, you should meet the following three requirements: 1, have an international driver’s license with at least one year’s experience; 2, be over 21 years old; 3, have a valid passport. It is customary for visitors who wish to hire a personal driver to pay his meals and hotel expenses. The cost of hiring a driver in Seoul is as high as W50,000 for 10 hours’ service a day. One can obtain detailed information about car-rental service in major Korean cities by contacting the rental agencies themselves.

**Dialogue 2**

Sandra and Su-Jin were enjoying a sunny afternoon lying on the grass. Suddenly it clouded over, so they packed their things and hurried to their car. On the way back home, Sandra thought that the car was not running too well. So, they pulled the car over for a checkup at the repair shop

낸드라: 여보세요. 제 차가 고장이 난 것 같은데 한번 해 주시겠어요?
정비원: 테스트를 한번 해 보도록 하죠.
두시에 친구하고 회사 앞에서 만나기로 했습니다.
I agreed to meet my friend at 2 p.m. in front of the company.
내일 저녁에는 도서관에 안 가기로 했습니다.
I decided not to go to the library tomorrow night.
무엇으로 서울에 가지기로 했습니까?
By what (mode of transport) did you decide to go to Seoul?

The sentence ending -기는 하다

This ending is used to express a speaker’s intention to acknowledge the message of the main verb, but to refer to another message by way of contrast. It is equivalent to the expression “It’s true, but…”

저는 서울을 좋아하기는 합니다.
It’s true that I like Seoul, but...
금시계 같은 비싸기는 해요.
It’s true that a golden watch is expensive, but...
그 여자는 미인이기는 합니다.
Everybody knows that she is a real beauty, but...

The sentence ending -(으)면 안 되다

This ending is used to express the prohibition of a certain act by a speaker. It is a negative counterpart of the Korean expressions “-여야 하다” or “-여도 좋아,” and is equivalent to “should not,” or “must not.”

너무 늦게 가면 안 됩니다.
You must not go too late.
공원 풀밭에 들어가면 안 됩니다.
You must not enter the grass area of the park.

The temporal conjunction -동안에

This conjunction is used to express the duration of an action or process. The English equivalent is “while doing something.”

내가 여기에서 기다리는 동안에 무얼 하겠어요?
While I wait here, what are you going to do?
밥 먹는 동안에 전화가 두 번 왔어요.
While (one) ate, two phone calls came.
Exercises

10 You have a lot of things to do piled up in the office. Suggest that your colleague finishes (up) doing three things for you this afternoon.

11 You have a date with a friend at Chongro. Someone in the office asks you when you are supposed to meet him. Tell him that you agreed to meet at 4 p.m.

12 The weather has been so unpredictable that you have had difficulty deciding how to travel. One day a friend asks you what you have decided on. Tell him that you have made up your mind to go by train.

13 You have been living in Seoul for a number of years. One day an American newcomer to your company asks you how you like living in Seoul. Tell him that you like living in Seoul, but you have some reservations.

14 Recently, a male college graduate joined the company. Everybody is envious of his intelligence and hard work, but to you he seems somewhat impolite. Someone in the office asks you whether you like him. Tell your colleague that he is a good worker, but not the type of person you like.

15 In the park, children try to jump over a picket sign that reads "Keep off the grass." Tell them not to go in there.

16 Your younger brother watches TV for three hours a day. Tell him that he shouldn't watch TV for so long.

17 You are secretary to the company president. One day, when he was in a meeting, you received three phone calls for him. After his meeting, he asks you whether anybody called. Tell him that, during the meeting, three people called.

18 You are at the service station and your car has broken down. Tell the manager that your car needs a checkup.

19 At the repair shop, a mechanic asks you what kind of problem you are having with your car. Tell him that you heard a very strange noise while driving sometime ago.

20 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What kind of problem is it?
B: The engine feels very hot.
A: Let me check. Ah, the coolant has all leaked out.

21 Complete the dialogue:

A. 차 고칠 수 있어요?
B. 
A. 잘 모르겠는데요.
B. 
A. 몇 시간 걸리죠?
B. 
A. 안 되겠는데요.
두 시간 후에 친구하고 약속이 있기 때문요.

22 Reading passage  Sandra Hopkins has recently bought a new car, a Lemans made in Korea. She is very proud of it, so she and her friend go for a long drive. But while on their way, the car runs into a problem. Try to figure out how serious the problem is and how it affects their plans for the day.

Sandra Hopkins는 한국에서 생산되는 레망스를 최근에 샀다. 새 차를 처음 운전할 때는 기승이 조마조마하기도 했다. 어느 여름 오후에 스페드는 직장 동료인 수진씨와 교외로 놀러 갔다. 차가 고속도로를 따라 달릴 때는 가성이 신났다. 고속도로에서 한 두 시간 달릴 후였다. 그런데 갑자기 차에서 이상한 소리가 나기 시작했다. 들은 집이 나기도 하고, 걱정도 되어 차를 주유소로 몰고 갔다. 경비원 아저씨가 투정을 얻고 점검을 했다. 아저씨는 라디에이터에서 물이 다 새어 나가 비clarations 있다고 했다. 차를 고쳐서 집으로 그냥 돌아왔다. 계수가 없는 날이었다.

Key words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>레망스</td>
<td>Lemans car</td>
<td>기분 (one's) mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>생산되다</td>
<td>be manufactured</td>
<td>신나다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조마조마하다</td>
<td>nervous</td>
<td>걱정(가) 되다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>직장 동료</td>
<td>colleague</td>
<td>긴급이 나타나다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교외</td>
<td>suburb</td>
<td>is scared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>is worried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>luck</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:

- talk about your illness
- use the sentence endings -ㄴ(은)적이 있다, -는지 물어보겠습니다, -아(어/여)있다, -(으)던가요?, -(이)라고 생각되다
- use the conjunctions -(으)면서, -(아(어)/여)도, -(으)로 테니
- use the noun suffix -(은)으로
- use the particle -도록
- use the idiomatic expressions 한 숨도 못 잡았다: 아파죽겠다

Dialogue 1   ☀️

Anthony Miller fell ill last night, so he couldn't get a wink of sleep. The next morning he rushed to the emergency room of a private hospital and asked whether he could be examined immediately.

간호사: 어디가 아프세요?
밀라: 저 머리가 아프고, 온 몸이 쓰셔요.
간호사: 열은 어때요?
밀라: 열이 40도까지 올라간 적도 있어요.
밀라: 많이 아파서 밤새도록 한 숨도 못 잡아요.
간호사: 그래요? 응급환자를 받을 수 있는지 물어 볼게요.
간호사: 잠깐 기다리세요.
밀라: 예, 감사합니다.
간호사: 오늘은 감기 환자가 너무 밀려 있어요.
밀라: 두시간 후에 다시 올 수 있어요?
밀라: 지금 너무 아파 죽겠어요.
간호사: 그럼, 이리 빨리 들어 오세요.

Vocabulary

아프다  hurt  응급환자  emergency patient
머리  head

Language points

The sentence ending -(은)적이 있다

This ending is used to express one's experience in the past. Its meaning is equivalent to the expression “one has done something.”

일본에 가본 적이 있어요.
I have been to Japan.

전에 김선생님은 은행에서 돈을 빌린 적이 있다.
Mr. Kim has borrowed money from the bank.

멕시코 음식을 먹은 적이 있는데, 맛이 좋았어요.
I have had Mexican food, (and) it's delicious.

The particle -도록

This ending is attached to the verb and indicates the continuation of the action of a verb to a specified limit. It is equivalent to the preposition “until.”

오늘 아침에는 해가 뜨도록 갔어요.
This morning I overslept until the sun rose.

밤이 새도록 책을 읽었어요.
I read a book until (the) morning.
The sentence ending -는지 물어 보다

This ending is attached to the end of an interrogative clause within the main sentence. The same ending is used for past, present, and future tense. The English equivalent is “one asks when/if…”

언제 김선생님과 사무실에 돌아 오는지 물어 봤어요.
I asked when Mr. Kim would return to his office.

언제 기차가 역에 도착했는지 물어 봤어요.
I asked when the train arrived at the station.

언제 그 사람이 여기에 오겠는지 물어 봤어요.
I asked when he would come here.

The sentence ending -아(여/여) 있다

This ending is attached to the stem of such intransitive verbs as “go,” “come,” “stand up,” “sit down.” It expresses the location of an object or the continuation of an action that has already taken place.

책이 책상 위에 놓여 있다. There is a book on the desk.
거리에 차가 많이 밀려 있다. A lot of cars are backed up on the streets.

The noun suffix -ㄹ(을) 정도로

This suffix is attached to a noun and indicates an extent to which the verb of a first clause affects one. The English equivalent is “to the extent that…”

죽을 정도로 머리가 아파요.
I suffered a headache that was (lit. to the extent that it was) almost killing me.

내 친구가 달리는 정도로 나도 잘 달릴 수 있어요.
I can run as fast as (lit. to the extent that I am as fast as) my friend.

Idiomatic expressions

한 숨도 못 잡다 fail to get even a wink of sleep; 아파 죽겠다 dying of pain

어제 저녁에 너무 더워서 한 숨도 못 잡아요.
I couldn’t get even a wink of sleep due to the heat last night.

너무 오래 걸어서 다리가 아파 죽겠어요.
The pain caused by the long walk is killing me.

Exercises

1 You are in the emergency room of a Korean hospital, and a nurse asks how high your body temperature went up to that night. Tell her that it reached 41°C on occasions.

2 Someone tells you that he has finished Hemingway’s novel For Whom the Bell Tolls. Tell him that you have read that novel also.

3 A colleague says that you look pale. Tell him that you didn’t get a wink of sleep last night.

4 You receive a phone call for Section Chief Hwang, and you think he is wrapped up at work. Tell the caller that you will ask Hwang if he can get to the phone right now.

5 A friend of yours asks you to go climbing on Saturday. Tell him that you have too many things to do.

6 In the examination room of a hospital, a doctor asks you how severe the pains in your stomach are. Tell him that they are almost killing you.

7 Someone comments that your eyes are red and are bugging out a bit. Tell him the reason why you didn’t get a wink of sleep all night.

8 Arrange the words of the dialogue to make sense:
   a 올라간, 적이, 39도까지, 어제 밤에, 일어, 있어요.
   b 풀어, 응급환자를, 있는지, 불게요, 발을 수
   c 감기, 오늘은, 밀려, 환자가, 많이, 있어요.

9 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
   A. Which part of your body hurts the most?
   B. I have a headache.
A. How severe is it?
B. It's so severe (that) I couldn't get a wink of sleep.
A. Oh, too bad. Let me examine you first.

10 Complete the dialogue:

A: 어디가 아프세요?
B: 
A: 어떻게 목이 아파요?
B: 
A: 맞아요. 목이 부왔습니다.
B: 
A. 감기 증상인 것 같아요.

Culture point
When foreign travelers get sick, they can get medical treatment at such general hospitals as the Severance Hospital or the Asian Medical Center, where doctors and nurses speak some English. An emergency visit may involve a couple of hours’ waiting in a crowded waiting room. However, if you can manage some Korean conversation, you can, of course, get medical treatment for a minor illness from a privately owned local hospital. If some medical emergency should occur on the street or open area, you can ask a passerby for assistance, since it is unlikely that you will see a policeman patrolling on the Korean streets. Or, you can call for an ambulance from Asia Emergency Assistance, which provides a 24-hour emergency service for foreigners. For colds and other minor ailments, you can purchase appropriate medicine at Korean drugstores, which are on virtually every street corner. It is legal for a Korean pharmacist to prescribe medicine on the basis of symptoms described by the patient.

Dialogue 2  The doctor examines Mr. Miller and prescribes some medicine for him

의사: Anthony Miller씨죠? 어디가 아프죠?
밀리: 고열이 나면서 두통이 심해요.
의사: 목을 빗고 저기 진찰대 위에 누으세요.
밀리: (진찰대 위에 누으면서) 이렇게 말입니까?
의사: 예. 배를 이렇게 눌러도 안 아프지요?
밀리: 안 아파요.
의사: 목은 아프지 않던가요?
밀리: 예. 편도선이 부은 것 같아요.

Vocabulary

| 고열 | high fever |
| 두통 | headache |
| 심하다 | severe |
| 옷 | clothes |
| 벗다 | take off |
| 진찰대 | examination table |
| 눕다 | lie down |
| 말 | word |
| 배 | belly |
| 누르다 | press |
| 목 | neck |
| 편도선 | tonsil |
| 뻥다 | swell |
| 걱정 마세요. 유행성 독감이라고 생각하세요. | don’t worry |
| 감기약을 처방해 줄테니 잠깐 기다리세요. | contagious flu |
| 간호원: (처방전을 주면서) 너 시간마다 한 봉지를 드세요. | come to think |
| 밀리: 예. 감사합니다. | cold medicine |
| 의사: | give (someone) a |
| 밀리: 때해 주다. | prescription |
| 의사: 간호원이 (주면서) 너 시간마다 한 봉지를 드세요. | prescription |
| 밀리: 예. 감사합니다. | every four hours |
| 의사: 간호원이 (주면서) 너 시간마다 한 봉지를 드세요. | bag |

Language points

The conjunction -(으)면서

This attaches to the stem of an action verb and expresses two actions in combination. It translates as “while doing . . .”

학생들이 점심을 먹으면서 책을 읽고 있습니다.
While having lunch, students read books.

John은 잠 자면서 코를 긁어요.
John snores while sleeping.

The conjunction -아(어/여)도

This conjunction is attached to the stem of any verb and expresses the contrast in value between the first and second clauses. The English equivalent is “even if . . .”

오늘은 비가 와도 바닷가에 갈거예요.
I'll go to the beach even if it does rain.
Mary는 김치가 배워도 잘 먹어요.
Mary eats Kimchi well even if it is hot and spicy.
내 동생은 공부를 열심히 해도, 성적은 좋지 않아요.
My younger brother doesn’t get good grades even if he studies hard.

**The sentence ending -(이)던가요?**

This is attached to the stem of any verb and asks an informal question. The suffix 이 is taken after the linking verb (see Lesson 6).

배가 아프면 열이 나던가요?
Do you experience a hot fever when your stomach aches?

이과장님 지금 사무실에 계신가요?
Do you know that Section Chief Lee is now in his office?

그분 직업이 회사원이던가요?
Do you know he is a man working for the company?

**The sentence ending -(이)라고 생각되다**

This sentence ending is attached to a noun and indicates what a speaker thinks about the included sentence. The sentence ending -(으)로 하다 is used for all other sentences that end in -다, except the sentence that uses the linking verb.

저분은 국민학교 선생님이라고 생각되요.
I think that that person is a teacher at an elementary school.

저 건물은 옥상빌딩이라고 생각되요.
I think that the building over there is the 63 building.

미국 학생들은 한국어 공부를 열심히 한다고 생각되요.
I think that American students study (the) Korean (language) very hard.

**The causal conjunction -咆(을)테니**

In a two-clause sentence, this ending is attached to the stem of any action verb in the first clause and explains a reason or cause for the second clause (which can take an imperative, request, or interrogative form).

곧 나올테니, 여기서 기다리세요.
Since I will come out shortly, please wait here.

기차가 십분 후면 도착할테니, 플랫폼 홈에서 기다립시다.
Since the train will arrive in ten minutes, let’s wait on the platform.

**Exercises**

11 You are in the examination room of a hospital and a physician asks you how bad the symptoms of your cold are. Tell him that you have pains in your throat and you also have a severe headache.

12 Noticing that you look tired, a friend asks how you feel. Tell him that, although you didn’t feel too good, you got to work today.

13 A doctor examines part of your stomach and asks you whether it hurts you. Tell him that, even if he presses hard, it doesn’t hurt you too much.

14 A colleague tells you about a recent bout of flu. Ask him if his temperature went up to 40°C.

15 You are not sure whether Section Chief Lee is in his office right now, and you happen to notice that his secretary is nearby. Ask her if he is in his office.

16 You are taking a friend who has come to visit Seoul on a tour. Looking up at the tallest building in the vicinity, she asks you what building it is. Tell her that you think that it’s the 63 building.

17 You are distributing some supplies to the people in your office, and they are swarming around you to get things first. Tell them that, since everybody will get supplies, they should stand in line.

18 Correct your friend’s grammar:

a 배 누르면 아프지 안던가요?
b 감기약을 처방해 준 터이니, 여기서 기다리세요.
c 요즈음 유행하는 독감이라고 생각됩니다.

19 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: Where does it really hurt you (i.e., hurt badly)?
B: I have a high temperature and my throat really hurts.
A: Can you get up on the examination table and lie down?
B: Do you mean like this?
A: Yeah. That's it.
B: When I press here, do you feel any pain?
A: I don't think I feel any pain there.

20 Complete the dialogue:
A. 어디가 아프시죠?
B. 
A. 옷을 벗고 이 진찰대 위에 누우세요.
B. 
A. 예, 좋습니다. 벌금 누르면 어디가 아프니까?
B. 
A. 목은 아프지 않던가요?
B. 
A. 위가 나쁜 것 같습니까.

21 Reading passage Anthony Miller came down with a high fever yesterday, so he had to stay in bed all day. When he couldn't stand the pain anymore, he went to a hospital in the neighborhood. After the doctor examined him, he gave him a prescription. Anthony fell into a deep sleep only after taking some medication for his high fever. Try to figure out what kinds of symptoms he showed and how often he was told to take medication every day.

Anthony Miller는 어제 저녁부터 몸이 불편하여 침대에 누워 있었다. 열이 40도까지 올라간 적이 있고, 배도 아프고 잠을 잘 수가 없었다. 더 이상 잠을 수가 없어서 11시경에 근처에 있는 개인병원의 응급실에 갔다. 응급실에는 강기 환자들이 많이 몰려 있어서 매 우 혼잡했다. 한시간 정도 기다린 후에 의사 선생님의 진찰을 받을 수 있었다. 의사 선생님은 진찰을 한 후에 해열제 약을 지어 주면서 4시간마다 먹으라고 했다. Miller는 집에 돌아와 약을 먹고 잠을 잘 수 있었다.

Key words
불편하다 feel uncomfortable 불리다 crowded
열 fever with people
아프다 ache (verb) 진찰을 받아 be examined
참다 put up with 해열제 for high
개인병원 개인병원 emergency
응급실 hospital 응급실
room room 지어주다 prescribe
Exercise 9

1 ㅏ 2 ㅣ 3 ㄹ 4 ㅁ 5 ㅅ

Unit 3 Diphthongs

Exercise 10

1 가 2 구 3 저 4 배 5 려
6 마 7 교 8 죏 9 료 10 격

Exercise 11

1 야구 2 교사 3 여유 4 여자 5 여우
6 요리 7 예사 8 조서 9 자유 10 예기

Exercise 12 (Individual practice)

Exercise 13 (Individual practice)

Exercise 14

1 웨 2 쉬 3 과 4 빠 5 셀
6 낫 7 홀 8 죌 9 위 10 웨

Exercise 15

1 겨자 2 종이 3 선박 4 양력 5 벽지
6 숭병 7 개석 8 달력 9 날개 10 양복

Exercise 16

1 ㅏ 2 노 3 ㅣ 4 ㅁ 5 오, ㅓ

Unit 4 Aspirated consonants

Exercise 17 (Individual practice)

Exercise 18 (Individual practice)

Exercise 19

1 총 2 병 3 적 4 차리 5 태방
6 바리 7 차리 8 볼락 9 현대 10 추기

Exercise 20

1 잼 멋 2 칠 젠 3 명 덕 4 빗 메 5 쟁 거

Exercise 21

1 ㅏ 2 ㅅ 3 ữu 4 ㄱ 5 ㆆ

Exercise 22

1 펜 2 토 3 차 창

Unit 5 Double consonants

Exercise 23 (Individual practice)

Exercise 24 (Individual practice)

Exercise 25

1 지 2 꾀 3 도 4 돌 5 빽
6 더 7 들 8 겨 9 걸 10 달

Exercise 26

1 까다 2 그다 3 꾀다 4 달랑 5 끝공
6 조석 7 죽다 8 죽석 9 푸다 10 쓰다

Exercise 27

1 까다 2 크다 3 꾀다 4 달랑 5 끝공
6 물 7 김다 8 치다 9 물 10 푸다
Exercise 28

1 2 3 4 5

Unit 6 Summary, word structure, and other aspects of Korean

Korean alphabet bingo game

The letters called are: 가, 요, 토, 차, 파, 마, 둥, 까, 싱

Lesson 1

1 a 김선생님, 안녕하세요?  b 이교수님, 안녕하세요?
   c 박과장님, 안녕하세요?  d 미스 강, 안녕하세요?

2 a 김선생님, 안녕하십니까?  b 사장님, 안녕하십니까?
   c 장선생님, 안녕하십니까?

3 a 잘 지내요.  b 그저 그래요.
   c 요즘 상 바쁘게 지내세요.

4 a 예, 오래간만입니다.  b 미스 리, 안녕하세요?
   c 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?  d 김교수님, 안녕하십니까?

5 a 강 기 수  b 박 상달  c 김 근영

6 a 미스터 김  b 미스 한
   c 미스 나  d 미스터 신

7 a 김선생님, 요즘 어떻게 지내세요(어머니세요)?
   b 미스 황, 요즘 어떻게 지내세요(어머니세요)?
   c 박과장님, 요즘 어떻게 지내세요(어머니세요)?
   d 미스 리, 요즘 어떻게 지내세요(어머니세요)?

8 a 교회에 가세요.
   b 도서관에 가세요.
   c 식당에 가세요.
   d 우체국에 가세요.

9 a 교회에 안 가요?
   b 도서관에 안 가요?
   c 집에 안 가요?
   d 우체국에 안 가요?

10 a 강선생님은 별로 안 바쁘세요.
    b 미스터 리는 별로 안 좋으세요.
    c 미스 진은 교회에 안 가세요.
    d 최교수님은 도서관에 별로 안 가세요.

Lesson 2

1 죄 your name 입니다. (e.g.: 죄 강영수 입니다.)

2 a 이분이 메리 진입니다.  b 이분이 김 교수님입니다.
    c 이분이 메리 스미스입니다.

3 a 우리가  b 내 친구가  c 책상이

4 a 교회에 가졌어요.  b 공부하겠어요.
    c 도서관에 가졌어요.

5 a D  b I  c R  d R

6 아니오, 모르겠습니다.

7 이분 알아요.

8 안녕히 계세요.

9 네, 안녕히 가십시오.

10 a 이분이 미스터 김입니다.  b 이분이 박과장님이십니다.
    c 이분이 미스 황입니다.

11 a 우리  b 그 사람  c 저희

12 a 처음 베풀겠습니다.  b 인사하세요.
    c 이분이 제니 리가십니다.  d 가 바야겠습니다.
    e 다음에 또 베풀겠습니다.

Lesson 3

1 a 집에 계세요.  b 커피 드세요.
    c 바쁘세요.

2 a 집에 계십니다.  b 커피 드십니다.
    c 바쁘십니다.
3 a 우유 드시겠어요? b 맥주 드시겠어요? c 잔차 드시겠어요? d 사이다 드시겠어요?

4 a 이리 왓으세요. / 이리 왓으실시오. b 이리 오세요. / 이리 오십시오. c 들어가세요. / 들어가십시오.

5 a 김선생님이 여기 왔어요. b 이선생님 주무세요. c 장박사님이 지금 집에 가세요.

6 a 김선생님이 여기 왔어요. b 이선생님 주무세요. c 장박사님이 지금 집에 가세요.


8 a 눈이 와서 교회에 안 가요. b 바빠서 교회에 안 가요. c 너무 피곤해서 교회에 안 가요.

9 a 미스 진의 책임이에요. b 캐리어수님의 책임이에요. c 박선생님의 책임이에요.

10 a 오늘은 피곤해서 공부 안 해요. b 요즘은 정사가 잘 되어요. c 오늘은 내 친구를 만나서 기본이 매우 좋아요. d 이선생님은 요즘은 매우 바빠요.

11 a 닭테에 잘 지내세요. b 지금 바빠서, 집에 못 가요. c 이선생님의 책임이에요.

Lesson 4

1 a 롯데호텔에 어떻게 갑니까? b 지하철역에 어떻게 갑니까? c 종로에 어떻게 갑니까?

2 a 여기가 시청입니까? b 여기가 국회의사당입니까? c 여기가 우체국입니까? d 여기가 동대문시장입니까?

3 a 여기가 미국 대사관입니까? b 저기가 신라호텔입니까? c 여기가 백화점입니까? d 저기가 은행입니까?

4 시청, 역, 우체국

5 a 와쪽으로 어떻게 건너갈까요? b 오른쪽으로 돌아 지하도로 건너가세요. c 여기가 대사관이 아닙니다.

6 a 저기지 지하철역입니다. b 저기는 서울이 아닙니다. c 저기 이 시청이 아닙니다. d 이선생님은 지금 안 바쁘세요.


8 Model answer

Mr. Anderson: 실험합니다. 여기가 플라자 호텔입니까?
Student: 아니오. 저기가 플라자 호텔입니까.
Mr. Anderson: 왼쪽으로 어떻게 갑니까?
Student: 왼쪽으로 곧장 가세요.
Mr. Anderson: 예, 감사합니다.
Student: 천만에요. 조심해서 가세요.

9 a 신문 읽어요. b 테니스 해요. c 연극 봐요(서양요). d 정원 손질해요.

10 a 시간이 있으면 이탈리아로 여행을 가겠어요. b 백만 달러가 있으면 이탈리아로 여행을 가겠어요. c 비행기가 있으면 이탈리아로 여행을 가겠어요.

11 (Individual answer)

12 a 바로 서울에 갑니다. b 비행기로 서울에 갑니다. c 기차로 서울에 갑니다.
13 a 버스 정류장에 어떻게 갑니까? b 은행에 어떻게 갑니까? c 도서관에 어떻게 갑니까?

14 a 서울에 기차로 가면 오래 걸리요. b 오른쪽으로 가면 극장이 보여요. c 모동이를 지나가면 우체국이 있어요.

15 a 택시로 가세요. b 버스로 가세요. c 지하철로 가세요. d 리무진으로 가세요.

16 a 고속버스에서 내리면, 바로 정면에 큰 건물이 보일거예요. b 그 건물 왼쪽으로 지나면, 다른 작은 건물이 보일거예요. c 역표소에서 표를 사세요. d 중심로를 따라서 곧장 뒤편으로 가세요. 거기 제가 있을거예요.

17 Model answer
이 길을 지나 사거리까지 ("up to the intersection") 가세요. 거기서 왼쪽으로 곧장 가세요.

Lesson 5

6 a 누가 서울역에 올니까? b 서울역이 지하에 있습니까? c 뉴욕에 기차로 가어요. d 주말에 친구 집에 가요. e 친구가 집에 가요.

7 Model answer
YOU: 어디 가세요?
COLLEAGUE: 영국 대사관에 갑니다.
YOU: 대사관이 어디 있습니까?
COLLEAGUE: 저기가 바로 대사관입니다.
YOU: 그럼, 다녀 오세요.
COLLEAGUE: 예, 안녕히 가세요.

8 a 교회 가요. b 집 가요. c 역 가요. d 도서관 가요.

9 a 아침에 도서관에 가요. b 오후에 도서관에 가요. c 정오에 도서관에 가요. d 저녁에 도서관에 가요.

10 a 형님께서 오세요. b 아버님께서 오세요. c 아버님이시오. d 사촌께서 오세요.

11 a 눈이 많이 왔거든요. b 눈이 많이 왔거든요. c 친구가 왔거든요. d 친구가 왔거든.

12 a 뉴욕에서 왔어요. b 요하네스버그에서 왔어요. c 시드니에서 왔어요. d 호화로우에서 왔어요.

13 a 내일 형님이 한국에서 오세요. b 제 생일이 오늘이거든요. c 지금 아버님이 지하철역 가세요. d 지금 비가 많이 오거든요.

14 a 주말에 친구 집에 가요. b 아버지께서 교회에 가세요. c 친구가 식당에서 점심 먹어요. d 편지가 서울에서 왔어요.

15 line 1. — 주무세요 line 2. — 자요? line 3. — 주무세요 line 4. — 잊습니다 line 5. — 주무십시오?

16 아버지께서 고향에서 오십니다.
Lesson 6

1 a 그것은 의자입니다.  b 그것은 신문입니다.
   c 그것은 사전입니다.  d 그것은 지도입니다.

2 a 아니요, 그것은 의자입니다.
   b 아니요, 그것은 오늘 신문이 아닙니다.
   c 예, 그것은 매일지입니다.
   d 예, 그것은 연필입니다.

3 a 아니요, 저문은 간호사입니다.
   b 아니요, 이문은 누나가 아닙니다.
   c 아니요, 이문은 남자가 아닙니다.

4 a 그것은 연필이에요.  b 그것은 펜이에요.
   c 그것은 책이에요.  d 그것은 지도이에요.

5 a 저는 있어요.  b 한국지도는 있어요.
   c 클립은 있어요.  d 공책은 있어요.

6 a 아니요, (연필) 없어요.  b 예, (시계) 있어요.
   c 예, (열쇠) 있어요.

7 a 미스 리는 식당에 있습니다.
   b 통소 과장님은 휴게실에 계십니다.
   c 비서 미스 홍은 간이식당에 있습니다.

8 a 스카치 테이프는 없는데요.  b 스테فيل러는 없는데요.
   c 가위는 없는데요.

9 a 불펜 홈 당다 주챗어요?  b 매모지 홈 당다 주챗어요?
   c 클립 홈 당다 주챗어요?  d 잉크 홈 당다 주챗어요?

10 (Individual answers)

Lesson 7

1 a 신문 왔습니다(읽어요).  b 영화관에 갔습니다(갔어요).
   c 한국어 공부했습니다(썼어요).

2 a 점심 밖에서 하실까요(하지겠어요)?
   b 차 한잔 하실까요(하겠어요)?
   c 슈퍼마켓에 가실까요(가겠어요)?
Lesson 8

1 a 보다 (action verb) b 이다 (linking verb) c 있다 (existential verb) d 많다 (adjectival verb)

2 그 영화는 좋았는데, 너무 길었어요.

3 음식은 좋았지만, 값이 너무 비쌌어요.

4 a 책 읽었어요. b 텔레비전 영화 봤어요. c 아무 것도 안했어요.

5 a 열심히 공부했지만 잘 이해가 되지 않았어요. b 많이 먹지만 살이 찌지 않아요. c 이 상품은 값이 싸지만 품질이 좋아요.

6 a 좋은 b 귀 c 비싼

7 Model answer:
   a 영화관에 가요.
   b 아니요.
   c 예, 미스김하고 있어요.

8 a 미스 장 내일 저녁에 시간 있어요? b 미스 장 오늘 밤에 시간 있어요? c 미스 장 점심 때에 시간 있어요?

9 오늘은 안 되겠어요.

Lesson 9

1 a 용산 지하철역까지 갑니다. b 미국 대사관까지 갑니다. c 김포 공항까지 갑니다.

2 동대문까지 얼마나 걸리니까?

3 a 충각까지 10분 걸립니다. b 동대문 운동장까지 30분 걸립니다. c 미국 대사관까지 50분 정도 걸립니다.

4 a 기차로 다섯시간 걸립니다. b 비행기로 한시간 걸립니다. c 고속버스로 네시간 반 걸립니다.
5 a 이것은 펜이고 저것은 연필입니다.
b 이것은 컴퓨터이고 저것은 칠판입니다.
c 이것은 책상이고 저것은 의자입니다.

6 a 왼쪽에 있는 건물은 무슨 건물인가요?
b 오른쪽에 있는 건물은 무슨 건물인가요?
c 저기 큰 건물은 무슨 건물인가요?

7 A: 어디까지 가십니까?
B: 광화문에 있는 미국 대사관까지 갑니다.
A: 어떤 길로 갈까요?
B: 서청까지 가서 지기서 우회전 하세요.
A: 알겠습니다.

8 a 제복점 앞에서 내려 줄 수 있어요?
b 은행 앞에서 내려 줄 수 있어요?
c 교회 앞에서 내려 줄 수 있어요?

9 요금이 얼마입니까?

10 a 도서관에 가서 신문을 읽겠습니다.
b 술집에 가서 사람을 만나겠습니다.

11 a 장보러 갈 수 있어요?
b 은행에 갈 수 있어요?
c 방을 청소할 수 있어요?

12 만 사천원밖에 없어요.

13 a 책값이 얼마입니까?
b 공책값이 얼마입니까?
c 메모지값이 얼마입니까?

14 a 모자는 사천원에 삽습니다.
b 옷은 사천 오천원에 삽습니다.

15 Model answer:
a 교보빌딩 앞에서 내려 주세요.
b 시청까지 갑니다.
c 아니요, 저기 신호등 지나서 내려 주세요.

16 택시로 가시죠?

17 A: 여기서 내려 드릴까요?
B: 아니요, 앞으로 좀 더 가시겠어요?
A: 저기에는 설 수 없어요.
B: 그럼 저 네거리 지나서 내려갈 수 있어요?
A: 그렇게 하지요.
B: 택시 요금이 얼마입니까?
A: 육천 칠백원입니다.

18 운전기사 아저씨가 길을 잘 못 들키 sidelined 시간이 더 많이 걸렸다. 그래서 택시비도 두배 지불해야했다.

Lesson 10

1 a 수건 사지 않겠어요. 
b 청바지 사지 않겠어요.
c 반바지 사지 않겠어요.

2 a 사과가 배반을 뺨니다. 
b 연필이 펜만을 뺨니다.

3 a ②번이 더 길어요. 
b ②번이 더 컵요.
c ②번이 더 돈이 많아요.

4 a ③번이 가장 둥둥해요. 
b ①번이 가장 길어요.
c ②번이 가장 길어요.

5 a 넥타이가 비싼 것 같아요. 
b 신발이 비싼 것 같아요.
c 티셔츠가 비싼 것 같아요.

6 미도과 백화점이 귀찮아요.

7 A: 오늘 오전에 쇼핑 가겠어요?
B: 오늘 오전에는 좀 바쁜데요.
A: 그럼, 내일은 어때요?
B: 내일은 시간이 있어요.
A: 내일 일이 끝난 후에 연락해요.

8 a 노란 가방은 얼마예요? 
b 빨간 가방은 얼마예요?
c 파란 가방은 얼마예요?

9 a 파란 티셔츠 좀 볼 수 있어요?
b 빨간 티셔츠 좀 볼 수 있어요?
c 노란 티셔츠 좀 볼 수 있어요?
10 좀 걸을 수 없어요?

11 이 가방은 좋아와 사지 않겠어요.

12 a 이 지갑은 값이 비싼데요.
b 이 양말은 값이 비싼데요.
c 이 빨간 모자는 값이 비싼데요.

13 파란 가방만 주세요.

14 이 모자는 현금으로 지불할게요.

15 a John은 요즘은 도서관에서 공부 안 한다.
b 저기 있는 반바지 주세요.
c 빨간 바지 사겠어요.
d 저 파란 가방은 어떻게?

16 A: 책가방 좀 볼 수 있어요?
   B: 보세요. 어떤 색을 좋아하세요?
   A: 하얀 색으로 주세요.
   B: 이것들은 하얀 가방이에요. 예쁘고 톱틴해 보여요.
   A: 이 밥색 가방은 얼마나요?
   B: 학생은 돈이 없으니까 많이 갈아서 사면 오천원이에요.
   A: 대단히 감사합니다.

17 Model answer:
   a 롱캐 배화점에 갑니다.
   b 하얀색 양말을 신고 있어요.
   c 푸른색입니다.

18 민수는 물건값이 비싸서 빨간 시계를 사도 살 수 없었다.

Lesson 11

1 a 서울시내 구경을 갈까합니다.
b 비행기로 제주도에 갈까합니다.
c 수영하러 갈까합니다.

2 삼겹 오반이나 오심 육번 버스가 이태원에 갑니다.

3 a이나  b이나  c나

4 a 이질 삼병하고 사찰 오반이 시청에 갑니다.
b 사찰 육병하고 육십 철반이 미국 대사관에 갑니다.

5 a 오전 열시 삼십 분에 세바울호가 부산에 갑니다.
b 오후 세 시 삼십 오분에 무궁화호가 부산에 갑니다.

6 빛과 백화점에 갔다 왔어요.

7 A: 이번 주말에 뭐 하세요?
   B: 글쎄요. 비행기로 제주도에 갈까 합니다.
   A: 저기에서 누구 만나세요?
   B: 예, 제 삐춘이 저기 산아요.
   A: 아 그래요. 그럼 잘 다녀오세요.
   B: 그렇게요.

8 B: 미도와 백화점에 갔다 왔습니다.
   B: 예쁜 티셔츠를 샀어요.
   B: 값이 들어요.
   B: 그렇게 하세요.

9 a 부산행 표 한 장 주세요.  b 경주행 표 두 장 주세요.
c 광주행 표 세 장 주세요.

10 설악산 가는 기차표를 어디서 샀어요?

11 부산행 표 한 장 주세요.

12 지금 육 번 홈에 들어 오고 있는 열차는 부산행입니다.

13 a 오늘 신문 읽고 있어요.  b 친구들과 얘기하고 있어요.
c 아무것도 안 하고 있어요.

14 지금 첩 번 홈에 있는 열차를 태세요.

15 a 지금 들어온 기차가 부산에 갑니다.
b 도서관에서 잡지를 읽는 학생들은 공부를 잘한다.
c 기차를 타는 승객들은 미국 사람들이다.
16 a 미국에 가는 비행기는 10시에 있어요.
   b 부산가는 고속버스 몇 시에 있어요?
   c 수원행 지하철 세 시에 있어요.

17 B: 부산까지 갑니다.
   B: 서울역에서 탑아요.
   B: 오전 4시에 도착합니다.

18 A: 이번 주말에 무엇하셔요?
   B: 아마 뉴욕시에 갈 거예요.
   A: 뉴욕시에 어떻게 가셔요?
   B: 차로 갈 거예요.
   A: 갔다가 언제 오세요?
   B: 일요일 저녁에 늦게 돌아올까 해요.

19 서울역에서 광주까지 네 시간이 걸렸다. 광주역에서
   7번 버스를 타고 송정리에 있는 형님집으로갔다.

Lesson 12

1 a 양말을 여동생에게 주려고 샀습니다.
   b 블렌도 삼촌께 드리려고 샀습니다.
   c 터시츠를 할머니께 드리려고 샀습니다.

2 사전하고 펜을 샀습니다.

3 아프니까 회의에 참석 못했어요.

4 책이 재미 없으니까 보지 않았어요.

5 영화가 재미 없으니까 도중에 나왔어요.

6 아기가 방에서 자고 있으니까 조용히 하세요.

(Individual answers)

8 a 오월 육일입니다.  b 오월 십일입니다.
   c 목요일입니다.

9 예금 구좌를 개설하려고 왔어요.

10 A: 어떻게 오셨어요?
   B: 예금 구좌를 개설하려고 왔어요.
   A: 저기 표를 기입해주시요.
   B: 알았습니다.

11 B: 보통예금으로 하겠어요.
   A: 그럼, 이 표에 서명하세요.
   A: 저기서 잡간 기다리세요.

12 a 김선생님은 현금을 창고로 은행에 갔어요.
   b 이과장님은 쉬리 휴가실에 갔어요.
   c 흥부시는 봉급을 찾아서 임금 창구에 갔어요.

13 지갑을 찾아서 계산대로 가셔요.

14 예금 창구에다가 비밀번호를 적고 서명하세요.

15 반원 자리 다섯 장하고, 오천원 자리 세 장으로 주세요.

16 a 도장이 필요해요.  b 여권이 필요해요.
   c 비밀번호가 필요해요.

17 a 예금을 찾으려면 도장이 필요해요.
   b 이불간에 비밀번호도 쓰시고 도장을 찍으세요.
   c 만원짜리 다섯장 필요해요.

18 A: 어떻게 오셨어요?
   B: 예금하러 왔는데요.
   A: 저기 있는 표를 기입해주세요.
   B: 알겠습니다.

19 B: 예금을 찾으려 왔어요.
   B: 오만원 찾겠습니다.
   B: 여기 다 쌓습니다.
   B: 예, 알겠습니다.

20 예금을 찾으려면 여권이 필요해 호텔방에 가서 여권을 가져왔지만 은행문이 닫혀서 현금을 찾을 수 없었다.

Lesson 13

1 늦어서 미안합니다.

2 교통이 막혀서 빨리 올 수 없어요.
3 방금 전(또한 명)에 김선생은 사무실에 있었어요.

4 벌어 오기 전에 안으로 들어 갑니다.

5 a 지금 벌어 오니까 안으로 들어 갑니다.
   b 바람이 부니까 건물 안으로 들어 가세요.
   c 학생들이 교실에 많이 있다.
   d 이사장님이 많은 돈이 있다.

6 a 언제나 서울역 앞은 교통이 밀려서 혼잡하다.
   b 시내에서 학생들이 탑에서 교통이 복잡하다.
   c 서울에서 많은 한국음식을 먹었다.

7 A: 늦어져 미안해요.
   B: 덜렁어요.
   A: 빌리 뒤들어요, 교통이 막혀서 빨리 올 수 없었어요.
   B: 안됐어요. 대학생들이 대모셨어요?
   A: 아니요. 교통사고가 시청 앞에서 벌어졌어요.

8 B: 시청에 갔었어요.
   B: 예. 교통이 많이 막혀있어요.
   B: 아니요. 학생들이 탑을 벗어쳤어요.

9 커피 한 잔 갖다 주세요.

10 책을 다 읽은 후에 갖다 드리지요.

11 잘 지내십시오.

12 임을 책이 많아요.

13 a 동생한테(에게) 연필 빌어요.
   b 삼촌한테(에게) 자 드렸어요.
   c 언니한테(에게) 공책 빌어요.

14 a 일주일에 세시간씩 영화를 가르쳐요.
   b 일주일에 두시간씩 가르쳐요.

15 그 일은 아주 힘들겠군요!

16 a 쓰여야해요.
   b 책을 읽여야해요.
   c 설 동생하고 영화 보러 가야해요.

17 A: 요즘은 어떻게 지내세요?
   B: 바쁘게 지내요.
   A: 무슨 일이 그렇게 많아요?
   B: 요즘은 휴식이 많이 있겨요.

18 B: 예 좀 바빴어요.
   A: 개인지도를 하고 있어요.
   B: 일주일에 6시간씩 가르치고 있어요.

19 주말 여행에 관하여 이야기했고 버스를 타고 집으로 돌아오는 길에 교통이 막혀서 택시를 타고 집으로 돌아왔다.

Lesson 14

1 방을 예약하지 못했어요.

2 책을 다 못 읽었어요.

3 아직 쉬지 못했어요.

4 너무 바빠서 그 영화를 보지 못했어요.

5 주머니에 삼만원밖에 없어요.

6 저 스웨터 입어 볼 수 있어요?

7 아직 못 가봤어요.

8 운동장에서 못 자는네요.

9 길 건너 다른 곳으로 가 보시다.

10 A: 친구방 두 개 있어요?
    B: 여기는 친구방이 없으니까, 다른 여관으로 가보세요.
    A: 그럼 운동장은 있어요?
    B: 예, 운동장은 세 개 있습니다.

11 A: 몇 분이세요?
    B: 세 사람입니다.
    A: 운동장 쓰시겠어요?
B: 아닙니다. 저희들은 외국인이라서 침대방을 쓰겠습니다.
A: 침대방은 없는데요.
B: 아, 그래요. 앞에 있는 호텔로 가겠습니다.

12 언제 회의가 있을지 물래요.

13 a 새 옷을 사고 싶어요.
   b 제가 어지간히 생일선물을 사고 싶어요.
   c 책을 세 권 사고 싶어요.

14 제 방은 몇 호실입니까?

15 그의 방은 몇 호실입니까?

16 5인용 침대방 있어요?

17 침대방 두 개하고 온돌방 하나가 필요해요.

18 A: 이 호텔에 침대방 있어요?
   B: 아니요. 이 호텔에는 온돌방만 있어요.
   A: 온돌방 하나에 얼마예요?
   B: 3만원인데요.

19 B: 예, 있어요.
   B: 방 하나에 4만원인데요.
   B: 예, 없어요.
   B: 그렇지 하지요.

20 여권을 가지고 가지 않아서 동료직원 헨리에게 전화를 했다. 그가 여권 번호를 알려 주어서 투숙할 수 있었다.

Lesson 15

1 a Jane Kim이 나오기를 기다려요.
   b Thomas Moon이 나오기를 기다려요.
   c 이선생님이 나오기를 기다려요.

2 a 한국소설을 읽기 시작했어요.
   b 한국어를 공부하기 시작했어요.
   c 여자친구와 데이트하기 시작했어요.

3 4월에도 눈이 오는 때가 있어요.

4 123번 버스가 저기에 오네요!

5 직원들이 많이 불참했네요!

6 a 그는 여름이 오기를 기다린다.
   b 갑자기 비가 오기 시작했다.
   c Jane은 때로는 술을 많이 마시는 때가 있다.

7 A: 여름에도 눈이 오는 지역이 있다.
   B: 사람들은 가을이 오기를 기다려요.
   C: 한국의 기후는 사계절이 분명하다.

8 A: 한국의 여름 날씨는 여때요?
   B: 대체로 더워요.
   A: 비가 많이 와요?
   B: 예. 여름은 장마철이라서 비가 많이 옵니다.

9 B: 대체로 시원해요.
   B: 산에 동산 가요.
   B: 아니오. 없어요.

10 a 책을 사려 가요.
    b 친구 만나러 가요.
    c 친구들과 놀러 가요.

11 a 미국에 돌아간 것 같아요.
    b 그의 여자 친구와 해어진 것 같아요.
    c 사업장 여행한 것 같아요.
    d 아픈 것 같아요.

12 미국에서 온 여려 학생이 공부하고 있는 것 같아요.

13 전보다 훨씬 젊어졌어요.

14 여름이 되면 날이 길어져요.

15 A: 한국의 가을 날씨는 어떻게?
   B: 대체로 맑아요.
   A: 가을에 눈이 오는 때도 있어요?
   B: 아니요, 12월부터 눈이 오기 시작해야.
   A: 사람들은 가을에 무엇해요?
   B: 동산하러 산에 가요.
Lesson 16

1 2년 전부터 한국어를 배우기 시작했어요.

2 10년 전부터 수영을 배웠어요.

3 a 동우가 미국으로 돌아갔다고 해요.
   b 동우가 아팠다고 해요.
   c 동우가 사라졌다고 해요.

5 a 그는 사과를 좋아한다.
   b 그 사람은 사과를 좋아한다.
   c John은 한국을 좋아해서 한국어를 배웠어요.
   d 그 여학생은 내가 좋아하는 학생이에요.

6 a 회사가 가까운 아파트에서 살아요.
   b 외국인 숙소에서 살아요.
   c 친척집에서 살아요.

7 불고기를 가장 좋아해요.

8 A: 지금 어디에서 사세요?
   B: 호암 숙소에서 살아요.
   A: 그 숙소는 회사에서 가깝다.
   B: 아니요, 아주 멀어요. 그래서, 메일 아침 버스 타고 다니요.

9 B: 외국인 숙소에서 살아요.
   B: 한달에 8만원이에요.
   B: 대체로 편찮아요.
   B: 갓비를 가장 좋아해요.

10 남동생한테서 편지가 왔어요.

11 집에서 편지가 왔어요.

12 a belt는 한국어로 뭐라고 해요?
   b purse는 한국어로 뭐라고 해요?
   c pocket-size notebook은 한국어로 뭐라고 해요?

13 Model answer:
   a 아니요, 교회에 가지 않았어요.
   b 예, 안 갔어요.
   c 예, 보냈어요.
   d 아니요, 안 먹어 봤어요.

14 전화를 건 사람이 누구지요?

15 그 음식 잘 맛있었어요.

16 공책마다 받아 쓰세요.

17 전화 잘못 걸어서 미안합니다.

18 전화 잘못 걸겠습니다.

19 A: 저한테 전화는 것 없었어요?
   B: 예, KBS의 어떤 사람한테서 전화왔어요.
   A: 그의 전화번호 있어요?
   B: 여기 있어요.
   A: 그에게 즉시 전화를 해 봐야겠어요.
   B: 말하 7시예요. 그는 아마 퇴근했을거예요.
   A: 그럼요, 내일 아침 전화하겠습니다.

20 B: 아니요, 안 계십니다.
   B: 아니요, 전화 잘못 걸겠습니다.

21 택시 운전사는 Kerry 씨의 영어 발음을 잘못 알아 들고 Intercontinental Hotel에 내려주었다. 거기에 있는 경비원 아주 씨의 도움으로 택시를 타고 외국인 숙소로 갈 수 있었다.

Lesson 17

1 a 더 부유해지면 좋겠어요.
   b 승진하면 좋겠어요.
   c 세계일주 여행을 하면 좋겠어요.
2 a 렌시 잡기가 쉽지 않아요.
   b 잠을 잘 자기가 쉽지 않아요.
   c 미국음식을 찾기가 쉽지 않아요.

3 예, 파티에 가겠습니다. 감사합니다.

4 약도가 있으면 좋겠어요.

5 찾아갈 수 있을 것 같아요.

6 a 저기에 빨간 건물이 보여요.
   b 저기 있는 큰 건물을 왜요.
   c 큰 건물이 보이는 쪽에서 우리집은 왼쪽에 있습니다.

7 A: 이번 주말에 뭐 하세요?
   B: 한가해요.
   A: 저의 집에 오실 수 있어요?
   B: 그날이 무슨 날이에요?
   A: 아뇨, 시간을 함께 보내고 싶어요.

8 B: 클쎄요.
   B: 오늘 저녁은 안되겠는데요, 선약이 있어요.
   B: 죄송합니다.
   B: 예, 그렇게 합시다.

9 별거 아닙니다.

10 조금 늦어도 됩니다.

11 차린 음식들이 너무 맛있어 보입니다.

12 내일 만날때 책을 돌려주겠어요.

13 한국음식은 잘 먹는 편이에요.

14 A: 사장님은 출근했지만 회의에 참석하지 않았다.
   B: 차린 음식이 맛있어 보인다.
   A: 김치가 맵지만 저는 잘 먹는 편이에요.
   B: 매운 김치를 먹을 때는 불을 많이 먹어.

15 A: 어떤 한국음식을 가장 좋아합니다?
   B: 그렇게 맵지 않은 것이 좋아요.

16 B: 초대 받아서 홍가장남 댁에 갔어요.
   B: 홍가장남 생산이었어요.
   B: 예, 많이 먹었어요.
   B: 잡채가 가장 맛있었어요.

17 약속시간을 6시로 알고 너무 빨리 김가장남 댁에 도착했어요. 손님이 올 때까지 비디오 영화를 보면서 기다렸고 7시에 제미있는 파티가 시작되었습니다.

Lesson 18

1 세 아파트로 이사했다면시요?

2 저 건물은 46층이라면서요?

3 세 차와 세 아파트를 사셨다면시요?

4 장아성을 죽은 회의가 끝나자마자 나가셨어요.

5 시정에서 바서로 일하곤 했어요.

6 주말에 친구들과 동산을 가곤 해요.

7 새로 이사왔으니까, 한 탁 내겠어요.

8 저희 동네도 마찬가지예요.

9 a Jane은 다음 달에 일본에 갈 예정이에요.
   b 내 동생은 집에 오자마자 화장실에 들어갔다.
   c 여름에 날씨가 더우면, 사람들은 옷을 벗곤 한다.

10 A: 비싼 아파트로 이사 했다면시요? 그것이 사실이에요?
   B: 예, 새 아파트로 이사한지 석발 했어요.
   A: 아파트가 얼마나 들니까?
   B: 25평이야. 세 식구 살기에 좋아요.
   A: 아파트 단지의 사람들이 만나봤어요?
   B: 아니, 하지만, 집들이에 사람들을 초대했어요.
A: 김들이 할 때 지도 초대해줘요.
B: 물론이죠!

11 B: 지난 닭 밤에 갔어요.
B: 아직 만나지 못했어요.
B: 시간 나면 초대할게 해요.
B: 물론이죠.

12 이번 주말에 야유회 갈 시간이 없어요.

13 선약이 있어서 쇼핑갈 시간이 없어요.

14 새 차를 살 계획이에요.

15 가구는 아직 새 것처럼 보여요.

16 이번에 그 회의에 참석할 필요가 없어요.

17 새 아파트로 이사한 지 일년 되었어요.

18 백화점 쇼핑도 할 겠, 영화도 볼 겸해서 명동에 갈 것이다.

19 A: 강남의 새 집으로 이사한지 얼마나 됐어요?
B: 석달쯤 됐어요.
A: 집이 모두 정돈했어요?
B: 아뇨, 아직 엉망이에요.
A: 더 정리되면 보여 주세요.
B: 물론, 그러죠.

20 B: 아니요, 아직 집이 엉망이에요.
B: 2주 정도 걸릴꺼에요.
B: 예, 다음 달에 할게 해요.

21 William Ryan 씨는 40평짜리 아파트를 샀는데, 아직 집 정돈이 되지 않아서 회사 직원들을 초대하지 못했다.

Lesson 19

1 지난 주 휴가라서 일하러 가지 않았어요.

2 다음 여행이라서 많은 사람들이 해변에 왔어요.

3 너무 늦게 일어나서 회의에 늦을 뻔 했어요.

4 기름이 다 떨어져서 큰일 날 뻔 했어요.

5 4리터 넣어 주세요.

6 아파서 가지 못했어요.

7 이것은 새 옷이기 때문요.

8 A: 기름 넣어 드릴까요?
B: 예, 2리터 넣어 주세요.
A: 그럼요. 창을 닫아 드릴까요?
B: 하지 않아도 됨. 오늘 아침에 정소했거든요.
A: 알겠어요.

9 B: 이 근처에 있는 주유소 아세요?
B: 누구한테 물어 불까요?
B: 경찰 아저씨, 이 근처에 있는 주유소 아세요?
A and B: 아니, 미안합니다.

10 이 세 가지 일을 오늘 오후에 끝내 버리겠습니다.

11 오후 4시에 친구하고 종로에서 만나기로 했어요.

12 기차로 가기로 했어요.

13 저는 서울을 좋아하기는 합니다.

14 그 남자는 일을 잘하기는 합니다만.

15 공원 잔디밭에 들어 가면 안 돼요.

16 그렇게 오래 텔레비전을 보서는 안 돼요.

17 회의하는 동안에 세 사람이 진화했어요.

18 제 차가 고장이 난 것 같은데 한번봐 주시겠어요?

19 아까 말리는데 이상한 소리가 나기는 했어요.

20 A: 어떻게 오셨어요?
B: 제 차가 고장난 것 같아요.
A: 어떤 문제가 있나요?
B: 엘리베이터 말이 과열된 것 같아요.
A: 점검해 보죠. 아, 냉각수가 모두 다 빠져 버렸군요.

21 B: 어디가 고장 난습니까?
B: 엘리베이터에서 물이 다 빠져 버렸군요.
B: 4시간 걸립니다.

22 엘리베이터가 차를 운전할 때 락에버터의 물이 다 새어 버렸기 때문에 이상한 소리가 나서 차를 고치고 집으로 그냥 돌아왔다.

Lesson 20

1 열이 41도까지 올라간 적도 있어요.

2 전에 그 소설을 읽은 적이 있어요.

3 방세도록 한 솜도 못 집어요.

4 그가 전화 받을 수 있는지 물어 보겠어요.

5 할 일이 많이 있어요.

6 졸을 정도로 속이 아파요.

7 눈이 아파서 한 솜도 못 잊어요.

8 a 어제밤에 열이 39도까지 올라간 적이 있어요.
   b 응급환자를 받을 수 있는지 물어 봅게요.
   c 오늘은 감기 환자가 많이 밀려 있어요.

9 A: 어디가 가장 많이 아프세요?
   B: 머리가 아파요.
   A: 얼마나 아프죠?
   B: 너무 아파서 한 솜도 못 잊어요.
   A: 오, 안됐군요. 우선 진찰하도록 합니다.

10 B: 목이 많이 아파요.
   B: 목이 부은 것 같아요.
   B: 무슨 증상인 것 같아요?

11 목이 아프면서 두통이 심해요.

12 물이 아파도 오늘 일했어요.

13 세계 놀라도 그렇게 아프지 않아요.

14 체온이 40도까지 올라갔던가요?

15 이과생님이 지금 사무실에 계시던가요?

16 저 건물은 63 빌딩이라고 생각돼요.

17 모두에게 물품을 드릴테니 줄 서세요.

18 a 배를 누르면, 아프지 않던가요?
   b 감기약을 처방해 줄 테니, 여기서 기다리세요.
   c 요즘 유행하는 독감이라고 생각됩니다.

19 A: 어디가 가장 많이 아프죠?
   B: 고열이 나면서 목이 아파요.
   A: 진찰대 위에 누우시겠어요?
   B: 이렇게 말입니까?
   A: 예, 좋습니다.
   B: 이곳을 누르면 아파요?
   A: 거기는 안 아파요.

20 B: 배가 많이 아파요.
   B: 이렇게 말입니까? (돌아 누우면서)
   B: 배 위쪽이 아프나요.
   B: 목은 아프지 않습니다.

21 열이 40도까지 오르고 배가 아파서 잠을 잘 수가 없으나, 의사가 진찰 후 4시간마다 감기약을 먹으라고 말했다.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>furniture</td>
<td>가구</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furniture store</td>
<td>가구점</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>가끔</td>
<td>68, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if possible</td>
<td>가능하면</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>가르치다</td>
<td>154, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let me see</td>
<td>가만있자</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try to go</td>
<td>가보다</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>가볍다</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>갑니다</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gas</td>
<td>가스</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autumn</td>
<td>가을</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scissors</td>
<td>가위</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fetch</td>
<td>가져다주다</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>가져오다</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nurse</td>
<td>간호사</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>together</td>
<td>같이</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>감기</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold medicine</td>
<td>감기약</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank</td>
<td>감사하다</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>감사합니다</td>
<td>51, 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>price</td>
<td>값</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>값싸다</td>
<td>87, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut the price</td>
<td>값 맞추다</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kangnam “south of Han river”</td>
<td>강남</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open an account</td>
<td>개설하다</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private hospital</td>
<td>개인병원</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tutoring</td>
<td>개인지도</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>street</td>
<td>거리</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost</td>
<td>거의</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violent sports</td>
<td>가친 운동</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don’t worry</td>
<td>걱정 마세요</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be worried</td>
<td>걱정이 되다</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross</td>
<td>건너다</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building</td>
<td>건물</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>걸리다</td>
<td>57, 108, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>걸어다니다</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by foot</td>
<td>걸어서</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be scared</td>
<td>걱정이 날다</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game, match</td>
<td>경기</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guard</td>
<td>경비원</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>police</td>
<td>경찰</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marry</td>
<td>결혼하다</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cashier’s desk</td>
<td>계산대</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guest check</td>
<td>계산서</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bye-bye</td>
<td>계시오</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>계획</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea University</td>
<td>고려대학교</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be thankful</td>
<td>고맙다</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high fever</td>
<td>고열</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broken down</td>
<td>고장나다</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fix</td>
<td>고치다</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hometown</td>
<td>고향</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right way</td>
<td>곤장</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alley</td>
<td>골목</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>park</td>
<td>공원</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notebook</td>
<td>공책</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airport</td>
<td>공항</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section chief</td>
<td>과장님</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>관저에</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwang Ju City</td>
<td>광주(시)</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK</td>
<td>편찮다</td>
<td>47, 87, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extremely</td>
<td>정상히</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Kyobo</td>
<td>교보빌딩</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professor</td>
<td>교수님</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classroom</td>
<td>교실</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suburb</td>
<td>교외</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traffic</td>
<td>교통</td>
<td>149, 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traffic accident</td>
<td>교통사고</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish</td>
<td>낚시</td>
<td>102, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishing</td>
<td>낚시</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church</td>
<td>교회</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look around</td>
<td>구경하다</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sightseeing</td>
<td>구경하다</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rector</td>
<td>구내식당</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>구두</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>station number</td>
<td>국</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elementary school</td>
<td>국민학교</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that thing</td>
<td>그것</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>내다</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treat</td>
<td>내다</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let someone off</td>
<td>내리다</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get off/fall down</td>
<td>내리다</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>내일</td>
<td>68, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold noodles</td>
<td>날만</td>
<td>95, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too much</td>
<td>너무</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
<td>네</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intersection</td>
<td>네거리</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every four hours</td>
<td>네시간마다</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necktie</td>
<td>넥타이</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow (thing)</td>
<td>노란(것)</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>녹색</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to hang out</td>
<td>놀러가다</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farm</td>
<td>농장</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave behind</td>
<td>놀라두다</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>누구</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whom</td>
<td>누굴</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister</td>
<td>누나</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>press</td>
<td>누르다</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow</td>
<td>눈</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is snowing</td>
<td>눈이 오다</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie down</td>
<td>눕다</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York City</td>
<td>뉴욕</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
모르다 do not know  40, 117  the night  213
모양이다 it seems  194  방 room  158
모자 hat  103  방문객 visitor  57
목 neck  217  방문하다 visit  117
몰리다 crowded in group  220  방송국 broadcast station  184
못하다 cannot do  159  방학 vacation  154
무료로 for free  194
무슨 날 what kind of date  186
무슨 일 what kind of work  154
무소름 draw  106
무열(월) what (contraction)  98
무엇 what  74, 91  백화점 department store  55, 119
무연 휘발유 unleaded gasoline  205  번호 number  180
문을 닫다 close the door  147  번지 street number  186
문다 ask  45  받다 earn  194
물 water  189  받다 already  166
물건 merchandise  119  받다 take off  217
물론 of course  124  받지 not special  189
물어보다 ask  213  병리 particularly  32, 57, 97
워로 by what  63, 129  보다 see  98
미국 America  166  보다 더 better (or worse)  118
미국대사관 U.S. Embassy  57  보통 than  118
미스 Miss  28  보통예금 general account  139
미안하다 feel sorry for  149, 180
미스터 Mr.  28  복도 hallway  99
미식축구 football  97
밀레있다 backlogged  213  복잡하다 crowded  149
밀리다 backed up in a line  149
바람이 불다 windy  89  볼다 see (humble form)  36
바쁘게 busily  47
바쁘게 하다 busy (honorific)  32
바쁘게 하다 let me speak to  180
바지 trousers  101
밤(에서) outside  87, 170
-밥에 없다 nothing but  159
반바지 short pants  121
받다 accept  124
발음 pronunciation  184
밤 늦게까지 until late at night  194
발새도룩 until the end of
느리다 slow  48
늦게 오다 arrive late  157
늦다 late  129, 149
다 있다 have all  162
다녀오다 go and come back (honorific)  63
다른 different  158
다음 next  63
다음에 next time  40
다지다 get hurt  106
단풍 foliage  170
달리다 run  186.
대전(시) Taejon City  137
대접하다 treat  186
대체로 in general  119, 174
댁 house (honorific)  186
다락에 thanks (to you)  36
답하다 warm  177
대다 protest  149
도(온도) centigrade (°C)  213
도 also  92
도서관 library  33
도와드리다 help someone  205
도장 wooden stamp  139
도중에 on the way  157
도착하다 arrive  58
독방 single room  175
돈 money  143
돌아 turn around  51
돌아가다 return  66
돌아오다 return  63, 129
동네 neighborhood  194
동대문 Dongdaemun  108
동료 colleague  211
동물원 zoo  125
동안에 during  208
두배 twice  117
두고 two  92
들다 have  154
들다 eat (honorific)/take  91, 176
들르다 drop by  159
들어가다 go inside/enter  44, 133, 170
등산 climb  174
등산하다 go mountain climbing  174
디자인 design  124
따뜻하다 warm  166
따라다 follow  135
때로는 at times  194
떠나다 leave  129, 132
떨어지다 run out  205
또 again  40
라디에타 radiator  208
렴자 Lemans car  211
리터 liter  205
마찰 가짜 same  194
막하다 be jammed  149, 154
만나다 to meet  208
만두국 Wonton soup  93
만발하다 in full blossom  174
만원짜리 worth 10,000 won  143
많다 many  58, 87
말 word  217
말하다 speak  70
말하다 clear  170
많다 taste  96, 189
맞다 correct  170
매운 것 hot things  176
매운 반찬 hot side-dishes  189
매장구 ticket booth  132
맥주 beer  188
매달 hot and spicy  96, 189
매달 far  57, 108
명동 Myeongdong  102
몇 분 how many persons (honorific)  158
몇 호실 what room number?  162
몇 개 some, several  81, 159
 모르 the day after tomorrow  68
바쁘다 busy (honorific)  32
바쁘게 하다 put forward (object)  180
번역하다 take a new position (job)  184
부분하다 distinctive/clear  119, 166
분식집 Snack House  160
분필 chalk  81
불편하다 feel uncomfortable  137, 220
불드다 swell  217
비가 오다 it rains  170
시키다 order 96 안녕히 peacefully 32
시험하다 compete 106 안녕히 계십시오 bye-bye 32
식당 restaurant 32
식사하다 have meals 87 안으로 (toward) inside 170
신나다 be excited 211 안전하다 safe 129
신라호텔 Hotel Shinra 117
신문 newspaper 75 읽다 know 40, 92
신세계 백화점 Shinsaekyey
Department Store 119 앞 front 149
신호등 traffic signal 112 앞으로 forward 112
실태합니다 excuse me 51, 132 액수 amount 143
실마하다 dislike 98 야구 baseball 98
심하다 severe 217 약도 sketched map 186
심이월 December 170 약속 appointment 102
실다 want/wish 162 양말 socks 127
Shares cheap 124 어두워지다 get dark 170
수시다 ache 213 어둡다 dark 177
쓰다 write 70 어디 where 32, 63
-씨 Mr./Ms. 28, 43 어떤 some/any 170
아가씨 Miss 143 어떻게 how 28, 143
아가 a while ago 208 어디다 (be) how 87
아버지 baby 140 어머니 mother 69
아니라 not to be 51 어서 quickly 91, 124
아니요 no 40, 74 어제 yesterday 98
아마 probably 57, 107 언제 when 63
아무날도 no particular day 186 언제부터 since when 166
아무도 anyway 57 열다 how much 112
아버지 father 68 염마 don’t have 81, 143
아이구 oh! 189 염마이다 messy 199
아버지 driver/salesman 108, 112, 124
영국 inn 162
영권 passport 165
영권 번호 passport number 162
아주 very 57, 98 여기 here 47, 51
아버지니 waitess (married) 91 여기 있습니까 here it is 81, 112
아저씨도 yet 87, 199 여러 가지 many kinds 124
아과 죽겠다 dying of pain 213 여름 summer 167
아파트 apartment 106, 194 여행 trip 157
아프다 hurt/ache 212, 220 연필 pencil 75
안 not 32 열 fever 213
안녕 peace 28 열쇠 key 84, 162
안녕하세요? how are you? 28 영어 English 154
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>청구서 withdrawal slip</td>
<td>팀 team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청바지 jeans</td>
<td>편 side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청소 cleaning</td>
<td>편도선 tonsil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>초대받다 be invited</td>
<td>편지 letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>초대하다 invite</td>
<td>편하다 comfortable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>초순 first one-third of a</td>
<td>평수 Pyong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>표 ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>최근에 recently</td>
<td>표 slip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축구 soccer</td>
<td>구구UPLE platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출근하다 get to work</td>
<td>프로그램 program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출발하다 leave</td>
<td>프리하다 be tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출장가다 go on a business trip</td>
<td>피다 bloom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출다 cold</td>
<td>필요 need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친구 friend</td>
<td>필요하다 need (something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친구집 friend’s house</td>
<td>하고 with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친척 relatives</td>
<td>(하고) 실다 wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>침 판 blackboard</td>
<td>하나만 only one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>침대방 room with Western-style beds</td>
<td>159, 165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>침찬하다 praise</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간 column</td>
<td>하하다 only one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>코골다 snore</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커피 coffee</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커플 couple</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크다 big</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크레디트 카드 credit card</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>큰 일 big problem</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>클립 paper clips</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>키가 크다 tall</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타다 to ride</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타다 get on</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태어나다 born</td>
<td>하하다 do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>택시 taxi</td>
<td>한달이 넘다 over one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>택시비 taxi fare</td>
<td>한달이 넘다 over one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>테스트 test</td>
<td>한달이 넘다 over one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>텔레비전 TV</td>
<td>한달이 넘다 over one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>토요일 Saturday</td>
<td>한달이 넘다 over one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>통장 passbook</td>
<td>한달이 넘다 over one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>투숙하다 check in</td>
<td>한달이 넘다 over one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>퇴근하다 leave for the day</td>
<td>한달이 넘다 over one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>튼튼하다 sturdy</td>
<td>한달이 넘다 over one month</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| 할머니 grandmother 141    | 호텔 hotel 159                              |
| 할 일 things to do 154    | 혼잡하다 congested 151                      |
| 해열제 medication for high fever 220 | 후에 after 208                        |
| 행원 (은행원) bank teller 143 | 휴게실 lounge 83                          |
| 현금 cash 124, 143         | 회사 company 176                            |
| 현금을 찾아 withdraw money 143 | 회의 meeting 109                        |
| 형님 one's older brother 72, 137 | 힘들다 difficult 154                     |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>about 정도, 관하여</td>
<td>108, 157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accept 허락하다, 받아다</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accident 사고</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ache 아프다, 속시다</td>
<td>212, 220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>across the street 길 건너새</td>
<td>59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address 주소</td>
<td>139, 186</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after 후에</td>
<td>208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon 오후</td>
<td>118</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again 또</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airplane 비행기</td>
<td>129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airport 공항</td>
<td>117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all body parts 운동</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alley 골목</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost 거의</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already 벌써</td>
<td>166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also 도</td>
<td>92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America 미국</td>
<td>166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amount 예수</td>
<td>143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and 그리고</td>
<td>143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyway 아무튼</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apartment 아파트</td>
<td>106, 194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apartment units for low-income people 서민 아파트</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple 사과</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appointment 약속</td>
<td>102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are -이/-에요</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrangement 정돈</td>
<td>203</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive 도착하다</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive late 늦게 오다</td>
<td>157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as for ... -은/-는</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as for me (humble) 저는</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask 물다, 물어보다</td>
<td>45, 213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at dawn 새벽</td>
<td>129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at home 집에</td>
<td>45, 63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at least 적어도</td>
<td>208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at times 때로는</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autumn 가을</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baby 아기</td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backed up in a line 밀리다</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backlogged 밀려있다</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad 나쁘다</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bag 봉지</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bakery 제과점</td>
<td>112</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank 은행</td>
<td>147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank teller 행원(은행원)</td>
<td>143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baseball 야구</td>
<td>98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be to be 이다</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be to, be to exist 염심하다</td>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be cautious 조심하다</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be examined 진찰을 받다</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be excited 심나다</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be) how 어떻게</td>
<td>89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be invited 초대받다</td>
<td>193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be jammed 막히다</td>
<td>149, 154</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be manufactured 생산되다</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be scared 겁나다</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be thankful 고마하다</td>
<td>81</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be tired 피곤하다</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be worried 걱정이 되다</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beer 맥주</td>
<td>188</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before 전에</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin 시작하다</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belly 배</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>better (or worse) than 보다 더</td>
<td>118</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycle 자전거</td>
<td>65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big 크다</td>
<td>89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big problem 큰 일</td>
<td>205</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birthday 생일(생신)</td>
<td>68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blackboard 칠판</td>
<td>181</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black tea 홍차</td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloom 피다</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue (thing) 파란(것)</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boisterous 소란스럽다</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book 책</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>born 태어나다</td>
<td>141</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bound for Mount Sorak</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>설악산행</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branch bureau 지국</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring 가져다</td>
<td>189</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcast station 방송국</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broken down 고장나다</td>
<td>208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building 건물</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Kyobo 교보빌딩</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus 버스</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busily 바쁘게</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business 사업, 장사</td>
<td>44, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy 바쁘다</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy 사다</td>
<td>92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by car 차로</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by foot 걸어서</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by what 뭐로, 무엇으로</td>
<td>63, 129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bye-by (to the person leaving) 안녕히 계시시요</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cannot do 못하다</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cannot do 못하다</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car 차</td>
<td>65, 149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash 현금</td>
<td>124, 143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cashier's desk 계산대</td>
<td>146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centigrade 도(‘C)</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certain 어떤</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair 의자</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chalk 분필</td>
<td>81</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap 값이 싸다</td>
<td>87, 124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check 파주다</td>
<td>208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check in 투숙하다</td>
<td>165</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church 교회</td>
<td>33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City Hall 시청</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class 수업</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classroom 교실</td>
<td>82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean 깨끗하다</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleaning 청소</td>
<td>205</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear 분명하다, 마다</td>
<td>119, 166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climb 등산</td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clock 시계</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close the door 문을 닫다</td>
<td>147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes 옷</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffee 커피</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold 감기, 손다</td>
<td>167, 213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold medicine 감기약</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold noodles 뭉면</td>
<td>95, 125</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colleague 동료</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color 색</td>
<td>125</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column 커우</td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to think 생각되다</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortable 멋하다</td>
<td>129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company 회사</td>
<td>176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compete 싸임하다</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>completely 완전히</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congested 혼잡하다</td>
<td>151</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contagious flu 유행성 독감</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cool 시원하다</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corner 길 모퉁이</td>
<td>60, 205</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct 맞다</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counting unit for tickets 장</td>
<td>132</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit card 크레디트 카드</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross 건너다</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowded 복잡하다</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowded with people 물리다</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupboard 찬장</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut down 깎다</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut the price 값을 줄이다</td>
<td>127</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dark 어둡다</td>
<td>177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date 날짜</td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December 심이월</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department store 백화점</td>
<td>55, 119</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deposit (verb) 예금하다</td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>design 디자인</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
exist exists 63
expensive 비싸다 118
extremely 편향이 166
extremely smart 비상 189
fall down 내리다 174
fall ill 일어나다 173
far 멀다 57, 108
fare 요금 112
farm 농장 205
father 아버님 68
feel sorry for 미안하다 149, 180
feel uncomfortable 불편하다 220
female waitress (married) 아줌마 91
fetch 가져다 주다 81
fever 열 213
field 농장 170
fill in 기입하다 149
finish 끝내다 102, 106
First Banking Company 제일금융회사 146
first of all 우선 139
first one-third of month 초순 170
first time 처음 36
fishing 낚시할 170
fix 고치다 208
flowers 꽃 167
flower shop 꽃가게 193
foliage 단풍 170
follow 따라다 135
football 미식축구 97
for a moment 잠깐만 41, 81, 139
for free 무료로 194
foreigner 외국인 176
forward 앞으로 112
four seasons 사계절 166
frequently 자주 68
friend 친구 36
friend's house 친구집 97
from 향해서 180
front 앞 149
furniture 가구 199
furniture store 가구점 203
game 경기 106
gardening 정원일 59
gas 가스 204
gas station 주유소 205
general account 보통예금 139
get along 지내다 28
get dark 어두워지다 170
get hurt 다치다 106
to get lost 잃어버리다 57
get off 내리다 112, 174
get on 타다 108
get to work 출근하다 95
gift 선물 189
ginseng tea 인삼차 154
give a treat 한턱내다 194
give (someone) a prescription 처방해주다 217
go (long form) 갑니다. 가세요 32
go and come back (honorific) 다녀오다 63, 131
go by 지나(가)다 112
go inside 들어가다 170
Mountain climbing 등산가다 174
go on a business trip 출장가다 165
go on a picnic 소풍가다 174
go to hang out 놀러가다 170
go up 올라가다 213
good 속하다 47
goodbye 수고하세요. 안녕 112
great TGN 106
grandmother 할머니 141
green 녹색 124
greet 인사하다 40
guard 경비원 184
guest check 계산서 91
hallway 복도 99
Hannam-Dong 한남동 186
hat 모자 103
have have 81, 154
have all 다 162
have lunch (plain) 점심하다 87
have meal (honorific) 식사하다 87
have time 시간나다 199
head 머리 212
headache 두통 217
help someone 도와드리다 205
here 여기 47, 51
here it is 여기 있습니다 81, 112
high fever 고열 217
hometown 고향 68
hot and spicy 덥다 96, 189
hot side-dishes 메운 반찬 189
hot things 메운 것 176
hotel 호텔 159
Hotel Shiri 신라호텔 117
house (honorific) 대 186
how 어떻게 28, 143
how are you? 안녕하세요? 28
how many persons (honorific) 몇 분 158
how much 얼마 112
hurriedly 급히 147
hurt 아프다 212
it (as) 하면 58
if possible 가능하면 143
in full blossom 만발하다 174
in general 대체로 119, 174
in order 정리하다 199
information sheet 숙박부 165
inn 여관 162
interesting 재미있다 98
intersection 나거리 112
introduce 소개하다 36
invite 초대하다 186
is/are -이에요,입니다 28, 47
Itaewon 이태원 127
it rains 비가 오다 170
it snows 눈이 오다 166
jammed 막히다 149, 154
living room 용접실 199
long 길다 171
long time 오래간만 28, 47
look around 구경하다 199
look for 찾다 124
lounge 휴게실 83
luggage bag 짐가방 124
main gate 정문 149
make a noise 소리가 나다 194
make a phone call 전화 걸다 102, 180
make a reservation 예약하다 158
man 남자 79
many 많다 58, 87
many kinds 여러 가지 124
map 지도 81
market 시장 131
marry 결혼하다 150
meal 음식 87
medical doctor 의사소년병 28
medication for high fever 해열제 220
(to) meet 만나다 208
meeting 회의 109
merchandise 물건 119
messy 미란하다 199
milk 우유 45
minister 장관 176
Miss 아가씨 28, 143
a moment 잠깐 44
money 돈 143
month 월(달) 166
mood 기분 47
mother 어머니 69
mountain 산 170
move 이사하다 194
move around 움직이다 157
movie 영화 142
moving stuff 짐 199
Mr. 미스터, 씨 27
Mr. Kim 김선생님 27
Ms., Miss 씨 28, 143
Mount Namsan 남산 108
Mount Sorak 설악산 129
much 아주 57, 98
my 제 36
Myeongdong 명동 102
Namdaemoon Market 남대문시장 118
name (honorific) 성함 139
neck 목 217
necktie 넥타이 127
need (something) 필요하다 143
new 새로운 199
neighborhood 동네 194
nervous 조마조마하다 211
New York City 뉴욕 63
newspaper 신문 75
New Village station 새마을주유소 204
next 다음 63
next door 옆집 194
next room 옆방 81
next time 다음에 40
night/evening 저녁(밤) 97, 180
no 아니오(아뇨) 40, 74
no particular day 아무날도 186
noon 점오 65
not 안 - 지 않다 117
not good 번번치지 않다 189
not have 없습니다 81
not special 별거 189
not to be 아니다 51, 74
notebook 공책 75
nothing but -에 없다 159
now 지금 32
number 번호 180
nurse 간호사 213
of course 물론 124
office 사무실 48
OK 편찮다 47, 87, 158
on business 사업자 117
on the way 도중에 154
once 한 번 176
one bunch 한다발 193
one cup 한컵 47
one month 한달 175
one week 일주일 154
one's brother 형님 72, 137
one's wife/приват 199
only one 하나만 162
open an account 개설하다 145
order 시키다 96
outside 밖(에서) 87, 170
over one month 한달이 넘다 203
overpass 육교 54
over there 저기 51
pair 짝 127
paper bill 지폐 143
dred paper clips 클립 81
park 공원 100
particularly 별로 32, 57, 97
pay 지불하다, 날다 124
peace 안녕 28
peacefully 안녕히 32
pencil 연필 75
people 사람 170
phone call 전화 180
phone call that came 전화한 것 180
picnic 소풍 120
PIN number 비밀번호 139
plan 계획 199
platform (플랫폼) 홍보 132
police 경찰 79
right away 곧장 51
right side 오른쪽 108
room 방 158
room and board 숙식비 175
room number 번호 175
room with built-in stone heat 온돌방 158
room with (Western-style) beds 침대방 159, 165
ruler 자 82
run 달리다 186
run out 빼앗기다 205
safe 안전하다 129
salesman, -woman 아저씨점원 124
same 마찬가지다 194
Saturday 토요일 129
savings 예금 139
scissors 가위 84
section chief 과장님 186
see 보다 198
see (humble form) 빼다 36
sell 팔다 132
Seoul Station 서울역 51
Seoul streets 서울거리 149
some, several 몇 개 81, 159
severe 심하다 217
ship 배 59
shoes 구두 131
shopping 소핑 118
short pants 반바지 121
side 편 189
sightseeing 구경하다 130
sign one's name 서명하다 143
signature 서명 139
since when 언제부터 166
single room 독방 175
Sinsaakkaye Department Store 신사백화점 119
sister 누나 79
sit 앉다 44
sketched map 약도 186

ski slope 스키장 174
take off 벗다 217
take a new position (job) 부임하다 184
take off 벗다 217
take a new position (job) 부임하다 184
Glossary of terms used

Action verb  Verb expressing an action (e.g., “go,” “eat”)
Adjectival verb  Verb describing or limiting a noun (e.g., “big” 크다 or “big house” 큰 집). Roughly equivalent to an adjective in English
Adverb  A word that modifies a verb (e.g., “quickly”), adjective (e.g., “very bright”), or another adverb (e.g., “very well”)
Auxiliary One of the set of verbs (“can,” “may,” “must,” etc.) subordinate to the lexical verb (e.g., “go”)
Case marker  A grammatical marker used to indicate the function of a word in a sentence (e.g., subject case, object case)
Causal conjunction  A term used to indicate a cause-and-effect relationship between two clauses (e.g., “because,” “since”)
Command  Sentence which gives an order (e.g., “Come here, Jane.”)
Comparative  A term used to make a comparison between two objects (e.g., “bigger,” “smaller”)
Compound  A term used to combine two words into a single word (e.g., “rain” + “fall” = “rainfall”)
Conjunction  A word that connects two or more words, phrases, or clauses (e.g., “although,” “but”)  
Consonant  Sound made by a closure or narrowing in the vocal tract (e.g., /k/, /g/)
Contraction  A term used to shorten forms of words (e.g., “he’s,” “wouldn’t”)
Coordinate conjunction  A conjunction that connects two main clauses (e.g., “and”, “but,” “or”)
Correlational pattern  Combination of more than two prepositions in sentence structure (e.g., “from . . . to”)
Declarative  Verb form or sentence/clause used to state a fact (e.g., “John is ill today.”)
| **Demonstrative** | Adjective or pronoun indicating the person or thing referred to (e.g., “this,” “that”) |
| **Dependent clause** | Refers to a group of words that contain a subject and a predicate but which depends on the main clause to complete its meaning |
| **Discourse** | A continuous stretch of language larger than a sentence |
| **Exclamation** | Sentence which expresses the speaker’s feelings (e.g., “What a pity!”) |
| **Existential verb** | Verb expressing existence, sometimes preceded by “there” (e.g., “(there) exists,” “located”) |
| **Honorific** | Word or part of a word used to express levels of politeness or respect, especially in relation to the compared social status of the participants (e.g., “Your Majesty”) |
| **Indirect speech** | Used of grammatical constructions to report in one’s own words what another speaker has said (e.g., “He said he did not go there.”) |
| **Interrogative** | Type of sentence which asks a question (e.g., “Are you studying Korean?”) |
| **Intransitive verb** | A verb which cannot take a direct object (e.g., “He went the egg.”) |
| **Linking verb** | A verb that describes a condition related to the subject (e.g., “is,” “seem,” “become”) |
| **Main clause** | A group of words containing subject and predicate which stands alone as a sentence (e.g., “He is cutting the grass on the field.”) |
| **Modifier** | A word used in a sentence to qualify the meaning (e.g., “bad man”) |
| **Negation** | Construction that contradicts all or some of a sentence’s meaning (e.g., “not,” “nobody”) |
| **Nominalization** | A term used to indicate the process of forming a noun from some other word class (e.g., “his going to the theater” – verb to noun) |
| **Noun** | Name of a person, a place, thing, or a quality (e.g., “book”) |
| **Object** | Constituent of the sentence which is the “receiver” or “goal” of the action of the verb (e.g., “He cashed the check at the bank.”) |
| **Particle** | A term used to refer to an element which does not readily fit into parts of speech (e.g., “to swim,” “I do not understand”) |
| **Permissive conjunction** | Conjunction which expresses being allowed to do something (e.g., “may”) |
| **Permissive ending** | An ending which permits the action of the verb in a sentence to take place |
| **Possessive** | A term used to show ownership (e.g., “his,” “my”) |
| **Postposition** | A word of place and time in Korean which follows a noun (or noun phrase) (e.g., “house” + “to” “I walked to school”) |
| **Predicate** | All remaining parts of the sentence other than the subject (e.g., “I walked to school”) |
| **Progressive** | A term used to refer to a contrast of a temporal or durative kind of the verb (e.g., “He is studying physics.”) |
| **Pronoun** | A word used to substitute for the name of a person, place, or thing (e.g., “he,” “it”) |
| **Relative clause marker** | A grammatical element which combines one noun (or noun phrase) with another |
| **Relativization** | The process of combining a clause into a noun phrase (e.g., “The man who went was . . .”) |
| **Relativize** | The process of combining one noun phrase with another |
| **Request** | Sentence asking someone to do something (e.g., “Please come here.”) |
| **Sentence** | A group of words that expresses a complete thought (e.g., “A boy fell into the pond.”) |
| **Sino-Korean** | Adjective used to refer to words that have originated in Chinese characters and have become Koreanized in their pronunciation |
| **Stative verb** | Verb describing a condition which relates only to the subject, expressing a state of affairs rather than an action (e.g., “know,” “believe”) |
| **Subordinate clause** | A group of words that contains a subject and a predicate but depends on the main clause to complete its meaning |
| **Subordinate conjunction** | A term used to refer to a word or group of words used to connect a subordinate clause to another part of the sentence (e.g., “although,” “since,” “after”) |
| **Suffix** | Additional element added after a root or stem to express grammatical relationships or create new words (e.g., “wanted,” “internalize”) |
| **Superlative** | Term used to describe adjectives or adverbs to express a comparison between more than two entities (e.g., “best,” longest) |
Grammar index

L = Lesson

addressing Korean adults L1
adjectival verb 어떻게 L10
adverbial ending -게 L3
alternative expressions for
요즘을 어떻게 지내세요? L1
auxiliary verb -ㄹ(을) 수 있다 L9
built-in honorific verbs L3
causal conjunctions
-아(여/여)서 L3
-(으)니 L2
-기 때문에 L13
-(이/이)라서 L19
-(을)테니 L20
comparative particle -보다 (더) L10
compound form -아(여/여)
보다 L14
compound verb(s)
갔다 오다 L11
내려보다 vs. 내려드리다 L9
-더나 L16
-러 가다/오다 L15
-아(어/여) 지다 L15
한 턱 내다 L18
compound verb ending -아(여/여)
지다 L15
compound verb form -아(어/여)
주다 L19

conjunctions
-지만 L8
-는데 L8
-을(을) 겪 L18
-을/을 때에 L17
-만 L7
-아(어)서 L9
-(으)면서 L20
-자마자 L18
-지만 L8
-아(어/여)서 L3
-(으)면서 L20
of condition or stipulation
-(으)면 L4
permissive conjunction
-아(어/여)도 L20
conjunctive particle
-와/과 L12
conjunctive postposition
-하고 L11
consonant 후 L4
contracted forms
拢 L16
여집니다 L4
월 L7
contracted sentence ending
-시조 L9
contrastive conjunctions
-(으)나 L10
-만 L17
coordinate conjunctions
- 고 L7
- 이고 L9
correlational pattern
- 에서 (부터) - 까지 L9
days of the month L12
days of the week L11
declaratives L2
degree word L9
demonstrative modifiers 이, 그, 저 L6
dependent nouns
- 호실 L14
- 행 L11
double past tense marker 었(았)었 L13
echoing the question L8
emphatic marker - do L7
exclamatory endings
- 군요 L13
- 녀 (은/는) 데요 L10
- 데요 L15
existential verb 있다 L5
expression 마찬가지다 L18
future modification marker 크(을) L13
future tense marker 겠 L2
honorable markers 시/제 L5
honorable/non-honorable verb forms
and their usage L3, L5
honorable subject case marker L5
“How are you?”, polite expression L1
idiomatic expressions L7, L20
indirect speech ending
- 고 하다 L16
informal endings
- 이예요 L3
- 이예요/아니예요 L6
informal sentence ending 크/을 거예요 L4
informal ending, less polite
- 지요 L7
informal verb ending - 아(어/여) 요 L4
intentional/conditional ending
-(으)려면 L12
interrogatives L2
interrupting someone at work L3
irregular verbs
들다 L7
 בניית L16
히 L10, L17
ending in 두 L16
Korean numbers 1–100 (cardinal) L7
Korean sentence structure L2
Korean telephone numbers L16
large numbers and money L9
less polite informal ending
- 지요 L7
linking verb 아니다 L6
linking verb 없ㅂ니다 L2
location and direction L4
long negation forms
- 지 못하다 L14
- 지 않다 L10
manner adverb 별로 L1
modification marker - 크, 큰 L13
months of the year L12
names L1
negation L4
negative marker - 안 L1
negative questions L16
negative sentence ending
- 밖에 없다 L14
nominalizing marker - 기 L17
nominalizing suffix - 기 L15
noun counter - 장 L11
noun modifier - 녀(은) L8
noun particle - 음 L13
- 호실 L14
noun suffixes
- 류(을) 경으로 L20
- 전부터 L16
- 에도 L12
object case marker - 을/를 L7
obligation sentence ending
- 야(여/여)야 되다 L13
- 야 하하다 L4
particles
- 도록 L20
만 L10
만큼 for base comparison L10
- (이)나 L11
- 에서(부터) L9
- 전에 L13
- 까지 L9
past tense L7
permissive ending - 어(여/여)
되다 L17
personal pronouns
우리 L15
나, 너, 그 L2
pointing words 이것은, 그것은, 저것
이분, 그분, 저분 L6
polite questions L4
possessive marker - 의 L3
postpositions
- 에 L1, L6
- 에서 L5
- 에 (place) L5
- 에 (time) L5
- 에다가 L12
- (으)로 L4, L14
- 하고 L8
- 석 L13
- 석기 L16
postposition 에 (place), deletion of L5
progressive tense form
- 도 있다 L11
pronoun 누구/누가 L5
purpose endings
- (으) 려 L12
- (으)려 L12
question word 어떤 L15
relative clause markers
- 녀(은)/는/크(을) L11
- 녀(은/는) 것 L16
requests L2, L6
saying goodbye L2
semi-causal ending - 거든요 L19
sentence endings
- 고 싶다 L14
- 군요 L13
- 올것 같다 L10
- 곧 한다 L18
- 거든요 L5, L19
- 기는 하다 L19
- 기로 하다 L19
- 네요 L15
- 녀(은/는) 것 같다 L15
- 녀데요 L6
- 는 때가 있다 L15
- 녀(은/는) 데요 L10
- 녀(은) 모양이다 L18
- 녀(은/는) 것 같다 L15
- 녀(은) 적이 있다 L20
- 녀(은) 지가... 되다 L18
- 는지 물어 보다 L20
- 녀(은) 편이다 L17
- 크(을) 거예요 L4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sino-Korean numbers (1-100)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>